

Books Printed for A. Bosvile, at the Dial,  
against St. Dunstan's Church, in Fleet-  
street, 1697.

**T**He Memoirs of the Count de Rochefort, contain-  
ing an Account of what past most memorable,  
under the Ministry of Cardinal Richelieu, and Car-  
dinal Mazarin, with many particular passages of the  
Reign of Lewis the present French King, never be-  
fore in Print; made *English* from the *French*, the Se-  
cond Edition Corrected.

The Christian Belief: Wherein is Asserted and  
Proved, That as there is nothing in the Gospel con-  
trary to Reason, yet there are some Doctrines in it  
above Reason; and these being necessarily enjoynd  
us to Believe, are properly call'd Mysteries; in an  
Answer to a Book, intituled, Christianity not My-  
sterious. The Second Edition, with a Preface, and  
other Additions.

A Discourse of Conscience, Published chiefly for  
the Benefit of the Unlearned, tho' it may also be use-  
ful to others. Together with Brief Reflections up-  
on that which the Author of Christianity not my-  
sterious saith upon that known Text, 1 Tim. 3. 16.

The Interpretation of Dreams digested into five  
Books, by that Ancient and Excellent Philosopher,  
*Artemidorus*. The Eleventh Edition, much correct-  
ed by an old Original Copy, with the Life of the  
Author, with many more Additions, with the Judg-  
ment of some of our Modern *English* Writers, con-  
cerning the good use to be made of some Dreams,  
and the Table very much amended.



Books Printed for A. Bosvile, at the Dial,  
against St. Dunstan's Church, in Fleet-  
street, 1697.

**T**He Memoirs of the Count de Rochefort, contain-  
ing an Account of what past most memorable,  
under the Ministry of Cardinal Richelieu, and Car-  
dinal Mazarin, with many particular passages of the  
Reign of Lewis the present French King, never be-  
fore in Print; made *English* from the *French*, the Se-  
cond Edition Corrected.

The Christian Belief: Wherein is Asserted and  
Proved, That as their is nothing in the Gospel con-  
trary to Reason, yet there are some Doctrines in it  
above Reason; and these being necessarily enjoynd  
us to Believe, are properly call'd Mysteries; in an  
Answer to a Book, intituled, Christianity not My-  
sterious. The Second Edition, with a Preface, and  
other Additions.

A Discourse of Conscience, Published chiefly for  
the Benefit of the Unlearned, tho' it may also be use-  
ful to others. Together with Brief Reflections up-  
on that which the Author of Christianity not my-  
sterious saith upon that known Text, 1 Tim. 3. 16.

The Interpretation of Dreams digested into five  
Books, by that Ancient and Excellent Philosopher,  
*Artemedorus*. The Eleventh Edition, much correct-  
ed by an old Original Copy, with the Life of the  
Author, with many more Additions, with the Judg-  
ment of some of our Modern *English* Writers, con-  
cerning the good use to be made of some Dreams,  
and the Table very much amended.

# Vol. II.

## CHAP. I.

*Containing a full Relation of the Revolutions in the Muscovian Empire, after the Death of that Great Tyrant, John Basilovits, to wit: Under the Reigns of Fedor Ivanovits, his Son, Boris Goudenou, his Son Fedor, and the Counterfeit Demetrius.*

**J**ohn Basilovits had by *Anastasia*, his first Lady, two Sons, *John* and *Fedor* or *Theodor*; the first having been slain by his Father's own Hands, as we told before. *Fedor Ivanovits* was after his eldest Brother's Death, the next Heir to the Empire, and accordingly Crown'd Grand Czar of *Muscovy*, when he was scarce two and twenty years of Age. He was Married some years before his Father's Death, to *Irene*, Sister of *Boris Goudenou*, a Lady of a very lofty Temper and Carriage, by whom having no Issue, he had been several times commanded by his Father, to send her into a Monastery (according to the Custom of *Muscovy*) but his Affection and Endearments of this Lady, being more prevailing with him than his Interest, he had by several Delays, put off the Execution of it. Being now  
B mounted

## The Antient and Present State

mounted on the Throne, and *Boris* advanced to the Dignity of Lord High-Steward of *Muscovy* (the highest Station, next to the Prince in the Empire) he knew how to manage the Affection of a Prince, who always had preferr'd his private Pleasures and Retirement, before Publick Affairs, with so much Dexterity, that the Princess, in a great measure, ow'd the continuance of her Greatness to him, as he was absolutely beholding to her for his first Advancement.

*Boris Goudenou* was a Man naturally qualified for the Management of Affairs of State, and in a very few Years had attained to that degree of Perfection in Flattery and Dissimulation, that he seem'd to be the Darling both of his Prince and the People; both being equally well satisfied in his Conduct. Thus by the Advantages of his Quality and Dexterity, and the Weakness of the Czar *Fedor*, having got the whole Management of Affairs into his own Hands, he began to bend all his Thoughts, how to secure the Crown of *Muscovy* to himself and his Family; the better to enable himself to obtain his Ends, after he had gain'd the Affection of the common People, he resolv'd to smooth his way to the Throne, by the Favour of the Nobility, most of whom having a Dependence from him, as the only Person, through whose hands all Places of Honour, Trust or Profit pass'd, were soon brought over by the Hopes and Advantages of Preferments to his Party. Having thus laid the Foundation to his projected Greatness, the main Obstacle of his growing Ambition, was *Demetrius*, the youngest Son of *John Basilovits*, by a second Adventure, and Brother to the Czar *Fedor Ivanovits*, who was Educated under his Mothers care in the Castle of *Ugletz*.

Prince *Demetrius*  
murdered.

His Death being therefore resolv'd on, four of the Prince's own Domesticks were by vast Promises engag'd to undertake the Fact. The better to cover their Design, they set at mid-night the City of *Ugletz* on Fire in several places, and having thus  
fill'd

fill'd all with horror and confusion, they ran during the general Consternation to the Castle, under pretence of saving the Prince; and being admitted into his Bed-chamber, took their Opportunity, while he was looking out of the Window, to see the approaching Flame, and stabb'd him in several places with poyson'd Daggers, and so leaving him wallowing in his own Blood, took Post for *Mosco*, flush'd with hopes of ample Rewards for so extraordinary piece of Service. But they were grievously mistaken in their Account; for *Boris Godunow*, considering with himself how dangerous they might prove one time or another to his Affairs, took a Resolution to take the first Opportunity of ridding himself of these Evidences of his Treachery; to effect which, he hir'd others, who by the Temptations of great Rewards were made the Executioners of those four Murderers of their Prince.

To prevent the Murmurs of the People, who were all startled at the suddenness of so bloody a Tragedy, he made use of the same Method he had done at *Ugletz*; For, having caused the City of *Mosco* to be set on fire in several Parts, he did not question but that this general Consternation would divert the Peoples Thoughts from enquiring into the true Circumstances of this Murther: And to remove as far as possibly could be from himself, all Suspicion of having had the least hand in so barbarous a Murder, he declared, that he would revenge the Death of the Prince *Demetrius*, upon the Inhabitants of *Ugletz*. For, no sooner was the first Consternation, occasioned by the Fire in that City, a little over, but a Rumor being spread, that the Prince had been Murder'd, the Inhabitants forced their Way into the Castle, and transported with a furious Zeal of revenging his Death, slew all his Servants, without any distinction. This, which in all probability seem'd to clear them from the Stain of the Fact, was by the Contrivance of *Boris*, interpreted to their Destruction; alledging,



## The Antient and Present State

that they having slain all those from whom any Inquisition might have been made concerning this Assassination, it would but be a sufficient Argument of their Guilt; and that the Murder being to be laid at their door, they must be proceeded against like Criminals. In effect, a great many of the Citizens of *Ugletz*, were banish'd, some were tortur'd, hang'd and drown'd; And not contented thus, after he had caused the whole Court to go into Mourning, and recommended the Care of the Funebrial Pomp, to *Knez Basili-zuski*, he commanded the Castle of *Ugletz* to be raz'd and levelled with the Ground.

Fedor I.  
vanovits  
poisoned.

Having thus signaliz'd his pretended Passion for *Demetrius*, his next Care was to remove the only remaining Obstacle to his Greatness, to wit, the Grand Czar *Fedor*, whose End was hastned with Poyson, after he had reign'd twelve Years. The Great Duke being sensible of his approaching Death, did bequeath the Administration of the Government to his Lady, *Irene*, Sister to *Boris*, to be assisted by the Counsel of the Patriarch in Matters of Moment.

Imprisoned.

The Widow, after his Death, ascended the Throne without any Reluctancy; but, after she had for some time labour'd under the weight of so vast an Empire, whether she was grown weary of the Burthen, or that she thought it more convenient to entail the Crown upon her Family, by transferring it to her Brother, she declared her self incapable of undergoing it any longer, and acquitting her self of so great a Charge; and, that she, preferring the Contents of a private Life, before the Toils of a Crown, was ready to resign all her Authority into the Hands of the Nobility, which she did accordingly, in the Year 1597.

*Boris Gondenou*, who was sufficiently acquainted with the mutinous Temper of the *Muscovites*, when freed from that Servile Yoak, which otherwise keeps them under Subjection, and that most among the Nobles being raised by, and dependent from

from his Favour, would not dare to lay hold of the Government, was resolved to improve the general Consternation and Confusion of the People to his Advantage, being sensible that the Nobles would be emulous, who should most shew his Zeal in placing him upon the Throne. Finding therefore the Nobility ready to make their Addresses to him, he cunningly caused a Rumor to be spread abroad by his Emillaries, that being tir'd with the Toils of his Charge of Lord High Steward of *Muscovy*, he was resolved to quit it, by retiring into a Monastery, to end the remainder of his Days in quiet. The People being thus more and more transported with the Apprehensions of their Ruin, when they perceived, that among all the Nobility, there was not one who durst as much as to undertake the Management of the Government, they join'd with the Nobility, and the Clergy, whose chief Interest consisted in maintaining the Publick Peace, were of opinion, that all the States of the Empire ought to make their humble Submissions to *Boris*, to try whether by their joint Importunities, he might, perhaps, be prevail'd upon to take upon him the Burthen of the Empire. The Nuns quitted their Cloisters, and the Women ran with their Children in their Arms, to back the Estates of the Empire, and to offer their most humble Prayers to *Boris*, like to the tutelar Saint of *Muscovy*; so, that being at last overcome by their Prayers and Lamentations, he yielded to the absolute Necessity of his Country; and, after he had spoken much in praise of a retir'd Life, he protested to them, That it was not to the Honour and Greatness of his House, but merely to their Importunities, and the Love of his Country, that he was going to sacrifice all the Satisfaction he found in a retir'd Life, and that the only motive, which made him offer Violence to his own Inclinations, was, that he could not see any longer so glorious an Empire, expos'd to the imminent Danger of approaching Ruin; But knowing himself too weak for so great a Burthen, he hoped that they would not deny

*Boris* Gentle  
accepts of the  
Crown of  
*Muscovy*.

## The Antient and Present State

to Aid him with their Counsels, when Occasion should require; and that relying upon their Honour and Judgment, he would chearfully receive the Trust, which he would be ready to Maintain and Defend to the last Drop of his Blood, assuring them, that if he could not equal his Predecessors in Greatness and Glorious Actions abroad, he would endeavour to exceed them in Temperance and the Mildness of his Government.

It must be confess'd, that Boris did shew no less Conduct and Wisdom in preserving the Crown, than he had used dexterity in acquiring it. For he entirely engag'd the Army to his Service by great Rewards, he continued the Nobility in their former Dignities, and heap'd upon them new Favours and Preferments; The common People he ty'd to his Interest, by easing them of their Taxes, and the Mildness of his Government; and having thus secur'd the Affections of his Subjects at home, he was no less careful of Establishing a good Intelligence abroad with the Neighbouring Princes, for which purposes, new Treaties were set on foot, and concluded betwixt him and the Poles, Swedes, and other Nations, bordering upon *Muscovy*. Thus the whole Interest of his Government seem'd, in all human Appearance, to be built upon so solid a Foundation, that no power upon Earth was like to overturn it, as being founded upon the general Affections of the People at home under the Management of a Prince, who, for his Wisdom, Experience and Courage, was look'd upon abroad, as one of the most promising Princes, that ever ascended the Throne of this vast Empire.

But mark the sudden Change of all humane Affairs, how subject to continual Vicissitudes. What perhaps the most powerful Foreign Enemy durst scarce have attempted at that Juncture of Time, was effected by a poor inconsiderable Monk, who by his Devices put the whole *Russian* Empire into such a Confusion, that, in spite of all the Precautions of Boris, he broke all his Measures, and brought the Empire of *Muscovy* to the very brink of Ruin and Destruction.

7

Co O.  
bell  
count.  
rit  
ne-  
s.

B 4

That





*The first counterfeit Demetrius*

## Vol. 2. of MUSCOVY.

7

The Name of this Monk was *Frisko* or *Grisko* O. *Grisko* O. *tropheja*; he was descended from a very noble but decay'd Family, and by his Parents, for his Debaucheries, sent to the Monastery of *Trinouka*, to correct his Extravagancies by the Retiredness of a Monastick Life. But being not only of an excellent Wit, but also of a very handsom Aspect and Mien, and his outward Behaviour and whole Person suitable to his great Genius; and this Confinement not agreeing with his aspiring Thoughts, put him into a deep Melancholy. A certain old cunning Monk of the same Monastery, who was a secret Enemy of the then Great Duke *Boris Goudenou*, having taken notice of it, and judging that the Cause of his Sadness proceeded from his present Confinement, the Narrowness of a Monastick Life not being any wise suitable to his capacious Soul, contracted an intimate Friendship with him, endeavouring to divert his Pensiveness by the Instructions he gave him, first, concerning the Ancient State of the *Russian* Empire, and afterwards by giving him a full Relation of the present Posture of Affairs under the Ullurpation of *Boris Goudenou*. Being not unacquainted with the Treacheries by which *Boris* had compassed his Aim, he did not forget to tell him, how he had caused *Demetrius* the youngest Son of *John Basilovits* to be murdered at *Ugletz*, how the Grand Duke *Fedor*, the Elder Brother of *Demetrius*, was poison'd by his Contrivances; and that by the Murther of these two Princes, as by so many steps he had ascended the Throne. He told him, that though his Interest was laid deep at present in the Nobility, yet that there were not wanting such among them, as, being sensible of the Treachery committed against the two Princes, and envying his Greatness, would not Refuse to embrace the first Opportunity that offer'd to expose his treacherous Delights to the View of the World, which being once done, would soon turn the Affection of the common People into a mortal Hatred against him. He cunningly insinuated to the young Monk,

## The Antient and Present State

That his Person and Aspect, being not much different from that of Prince *Demetrius*, and his Genius fitted for great Undertakings, it would be no difficult Task for him to personate the true *Demetrius*, (whom they would give out to have been saved from the Assassins by the Care of his Mother) and, at once, to punish the Treachery of *Boris*, and to supply the Place of Prince *Demetrius* in the Throne of *Muscovy*. *Grisko*, who was naturally of an Aspiring Temper, having received the Proposals of the Old Monk with a great deal of Satisfaction, they began to concert Measures, which way to put their projected Design in Execution; and wisely considering with themselves, that as soon as the thing should take the least Vent, there would be no safety for this New-model'd *Demetrius* in *Muscovy*, unless at the Head of a considerable Body, it was thought most advisable for him to retire into *Poland*, where he might find an Opportunity to make himself known to be the true *Demetrius*, and with the Assistance of his Friends who by the Prospect of great Advantages might be drawn into his Interest, publicly lay claim to the Crown of *Muscovy*. Pursuant to this Resolution, the Old Monk, with his Pupil, travelled towards the Palatinate of *Kiovia* bordering upon *Muscovy*, where having introduc'd him into the Service of a Person of very eminent Quality and Interest in those Parts, whose Name was *Adam Wisniowski*, and given him such further Instructions, as he thought most conducing towards the Accomplishment of their Design, he return'd into *Russia*, in order to prepare the *Muscovites* for the Reception of this *Demetrius* as soon as he should be in a Capacity to appear at the Head of a considerable Party upon their Borders. To effect this, he got it whispered about, That Prince *Demetrius*, the youngest Son of *John Basilovits*, was still living, that his Mother having got timely Notice of the Design of *Boris* against his Life, had caused him secretly to be conveyed away from *Ugletz* to a place of Safety, and, in

his

his stead, had provided another Child much of the same Age, which had been murder'd instead of the Prince *Demetrius*, who, as he gave it out, was then in Poland, making great Preparations for the Recovery of his Right, against the Usurpation of *Boris*.

Whilst the Old Monk was thus preparing the Minds of the *Muscovites*, and especially of the *Cosacks*, *Grisko Otropeja*, who in the mean while, had by all possible means endeavour'd to insinuate himself into the Favour of *Wisnowiski* with very good Success, was only watching an Opportunity of making his intended Discovery, which soon after offer'd it self, when he least expected it. For, *Wisnowiski* being in a violent Passion one day, not only call'd him a Son of a Whore, but also seconded his Words with some Blows; which Occasion *Grisko* taking hold of, with a feigned Perplexity, and Tears in his Eyes; *You would not*, said he, *my Lord*, *treat me thus*, if you were as well acquainted with my Quality as my Person; and what grieves me most, is, that I should receive this Affront from the Man in whom I had centred all the Hopes of my future Re-establishment. Having spoken these Words, abruptly, and with a becoming Sadness and Modesty, he was turning away from *Wisnowiski*, who being surpris'd at *Grisko's* Discourse, ask'd him; all on a sudden, *And who art thou, then? what is thy Name? what Business is it has brought thee into this Country?* *Grisko Otropeja*, being not unprepared with an Answer, told him, with a well-composed Countenance. The same Confidence which sway'd me to put my self under your Protection, obliges me to reveal a Secret to you, which otherwise ought to be kept concealed in my own Breast: Know then, that *Muscovy* is my Native Country, that the Great Duke *John Basilovits* was my Father, and that I am the same *Demetrius*, who, by the Assassins sent by *Boris Goudenov*, was to have been slain at *Ugletz*, had not my Mother (who had got private Intelligence of the intended Murder) preserved my Life by sending me away secretly, and putting a certain Priest's Son, of the same Age, in my



## The Antient and Present State

my place, who was accordingly assassinated and buried in my stead. I have ever since lain conceal'd in a Monastery, till prompted by a just Ambition of Recovering my Right, I took a Resolution to seek for Aid abroad against the Usurper of my Throne, the Murderer of my Brother Fedor the late Great Duke, and my mortal Enemy. He shew'd him also a Cross richly beset with Diamonds, which he pull'd out of his Bosom: This, said he, is the only Remnant of my former Greatness, and the dear Pledge of my Mother's Love; and, since I have freely trusted you with a Secret known but to very few in the World, and thereby made you Master both of my Life and Fortune, I live in hopes that you will not refuse me your generous Assistance in the Recovery of my Father's Throne, which I shall always be ready to acknowledge to the utmost of my Power. Demetrius was a Person of a great Presence of Mind, and of an Understanding much above his Years; and being, besides this, of a very handsom Aspect; this, with the late Rumour industriously spread abroad by the Old Monk, first put *Wisnowski* under a great Astonishment; but having soon recollected himself, he a thousand times asked his Pardon for the Faults committed against a Person of his eminent Rank, with a Promise that he would endeavour to expiate the same by his future Services for his Interest.

Scarce a few Days were past before *Wisnowski* got a most magnificent Equipage prepared, in some Measure suitable to the Greatness of such a Guest, which he offered to *Demetrius*, with reiterated Promises, that he would engage in his Interest, and of all his Friends to support his Pretensions against the Usurper *Boris Goudenou*.

This sudden Change in the Court of *Wisnowski*, being soon spread abroad, as well in *Poland* as in *Muscovy*, as it served for a strong Confirmation of what had been whispered about by the Contrivances of the Old Monk, so it was not long before it reached the Ears of *Boris Goudenou*. He soon took the Alarm

alarm at so unexpected and surprizing a piece of News, and thinking it most advisable to stifle this Monster in the Birth, he immediately dispatch'd away a Messenger to the Duke *Wisnowiski*, with Orders to inform him of the Imposture put upon him by this pretended *Demetrius*, and how unbecoming his Quality it would be, to espouse the Cause of an Impostor, against a Legal Prince; neither was he sparing in his Promises, offering not only vast Sums of Money, but also considerable Possessions to that Duke, if he would surrender him dead or alive into his Hands. But this had a quite contrary Effect upon *Wisnowiski*, who, being in some doubt before, concerning this *Demetrius*, was now, by the great Offers made by *Boris*, entirely confirmed in his Opinion, that he must needs be the true *Demetrius*; and therefore renewed his former Resolution of Adhering to his Interest, maugre all the Temptations of *Boris Gondenon*. But having wisely considered with themselves, that he would leave nothing unattempted on his side, which might facilitate the Destruction of *Demetrius*, it was judged most advisable not to expose his Person any longer so near the borders of *Muscovy*, as was the Duke's House, but to retire to *Wisnowiski*, a certain place well fortified, and more remote from the Frontiers, belonging to the Duke *Wisnowiski*, who, in the mean while returned to his own House, to get the better Intelligence of what pass'd in *Muscovy*. Here he was met by another Messenger from the Great Duke, *Boris Gondenon*, who not only by his Master's Orders, renew'd his former Offers, but also promised more ample Rewards, if he would surrender the Counterfeit *Demetrius*, either dead or alive. But this Messenger meeting with no better Success than the former, he received secret Instructions to endeavour the Destruction of this Impostor, at what rate soever, not to be sparing of Dagger or Poyson, great Rewards or any thing else which might contribute to his Ruin.

This

## The Antient and Present State

This was not so secretly carried on, but that *Wisnowiski* had got some Scent of the Design laid against the Life of his Friend; wherefore thinking him not sufficiently secured against the Attempts of the *Muscovites*, in that place; especially, since they had drawn together a considerable Force upon the Frontiers, it was resolved to send him to *George Mniszek*, Weywode of *Sandomiria*, the Duke's particular Friend, which would both put him out of the reach of his Enemies, and probably, strengthen his Pretensions with the Interest of one of the most considerable Men in all *Poland*. Pursuant to this Resolution, *Demetrius* being provided with Letters of Recommendation from *Wisnowiski*, went to the Weywode of *Sandomiria*'s House, by whom he was received with all the Honour imaginable, due to his precluded Quality.

*Demetrius* being now at leisure to make serious Reflections upon the present posture of his Affairs, had no reason to be dissatisfied with his Condition, as being not without hopes of encompassing his End, with the assistance of such powerful Friends; but wisely considering with himself, that their first Heat might, by degrees, grow weak, if not quite become cool, if not sustained by sufficient Fuel to nourish it, he employed all his Thoughts to establish, by some means or other, his Fortune, upon a more solid Foundation, than that of bare Friendship. He was sensible, that the Persons, among whom he now lived, and from whom he chiefly rely'd in reference to his Grand Design, were all Zealous *Roman Catholics*, he very well foresaw, that if he expected to be back'd by them in his Pretensions, he ought at least, to shew some Inclination to the same Faith, without which, he judged that their Friendship would be very unstable. To obtain therefore this End, he thought it most convenient to make his Applications to the Jesuites, whom, by reason of their great Zeal for the *Roman Catholic* Cause, and the free Access and Influence they have over Persons of the greatest Quality, he

knew

knew to be the most proper Instruments for the managing of his Design. *Demetrius* therefore, having given them some assurances of his Inclinations towards that Religion they professed; these Fathers being over-joy'd at the prospect of so great a Profelyte; under whose Protection, they promised themselves one day to join one of the most Potent Kingdoms in the World to the Papal Chair, were not negligent in their Duty, but readily offered both their Counsels and real Assistance to *Demetrius*. After they had frequently discours'd him concerning the Chief Articles of Faith, in Dispute betwixt the *Roman Catholicks* and *Muscovite* Church, and given him such further Instructions, as they judged most convenient for their present Purpose, they were also not wanting in their Advice towards the promoting of his main Design.

They propos'd to him a Marriage with *Marina*, the Daughter of *George Mniszeck*, Weywode of *Sandomiria*, who entertain'd him at that time in his House; she was a Lady young and sprightly, and the Jesuits knowing her besides this, to be of a very haughty Temper; they did not question, but that the prospect of a Crown would be temptation too powerful for her to resist; which would at once strengthen his Interest in *Poland*, and remove all further Doubts, among the *Muscovites* and *Cossacks*, of his being the true *Demetrius*, Son of the Great Duke, *John Basilovits*. They represented to him, that *Boris Goudenon*, being a great Politician, had so firmly established himself in the Throne of *Muscovy*, that without the assistance of such a Person as the Weywode of *Sandomiria*, it would be impossible for him to shake his Interest; that they knew the Weywode to be one of the most ambitious Men in the World; and that therefore, if he could condescend to enter with him into a more strict Alliance, by Marrying his Daughter, it would be the most powerful Motive to engage him absolutely into his Interest. They advis'd him therefore, to make his Addresses first to *Marina*, and  
after



## The Antient and Present State

after he had sound'd her Inclinations, to offer the same Proposition to her Father, when they would be sure to back his Pretensions with all the Interest they had.

*Demetrius*, who had already been touch'd by the sparkling Eyes of *Marina*, receiv'd this Proposition of the Jesuits, with the utmost Satisfaction; and being spurr'd on by a double Motive, to wit, that of his Love and Interest, he sought only for a fit Opportunity to declare his Passion to his admir'd Mistress, which he having soon met with one day, as he was walking with her in the Garden, he by the most passionate and tender Expressions in the World, endeavour'd to make her sensible of his Love; which she having received with a seeming Indifferency, he made his next Applications to the Weywode her Father, unto whom he represented his Desire of allying himself with his Family by Marrying his Daughter, *Marina*, the possession of whom he preferr'd before the Crown, even of *Muscovy* it self. The Weywode, who had been beforehand prepared by the Jesuits, being not in the least surpris'd at this Proposition; after he had thank'd him for the Honour he intended to do his Family, told him, that he thought he was a little too hasty in applying his Thoughts to Marriage, at a time when the Eyes of the whole World were upon him, looking for the Success of his Enterprize. That a Mistress, at this Juncture of Time, might prove a great Obstacle to his Affairs; that, as he stood in need of the powerful Assistance of some Princes, so it was possible one or other of them might be for fortifying their Alliances with him by a Marriage, which, if refused, might prove very prejudicial to his Affairs. He concluded, that as his Honour and Welfare were more dear to him than his own Interest; so he advis'd him to gain his Mistress's Heart by the Point of his Sword, and by opening his Passage to the Throne of *Muscovy*, through the Heart of him that Usurp'd his Right. *Demetrius*, who by the Father's Answer,

swer, and the Indifferency of the Daughter, was fully persuaded, that the Success of his Love, did absolutely depend from his Establishment in the Throne, apply'd himself with more than ordinary Vigour to the accomplishing of his Design. For which Purpose, he was more conversant than ever with the Jesuits, and having at last declared to them his Resolution of becoming a *Roman Catholick*, and Establishing the same Religion in *Muscovy*, as soon as he should ascend that Throne; these Fathers being over-joy'd at this Declaration, promised him their utmost Endeavours in procuring the Assistance both of the Holy Father, *Clement VIII.* and *Sigismund*, King of *Poland*. Being flush'd with these hopes, he reiterated his passionate Addresses to his Mistress and the Weywode, so, that, at last he having obtained their Consent, in case he should recover his Throne, these following Articles were agreed on betwixt them: *That in Consideration of the Supplies and Aids to be given to Demetrius, he should be obliged, after his Accession to the Crown, to re-pay the Weywode his full Charges, Marry the Lady Marina, his Daughter, and introduce the Roman Faith in Muscovy.* These Articles being Sign'd and Ratified, he was by the Weywode of *Sandomiria* and *Wisnowiski*, introduced to the King of *Poland*, who, at the Recital of his Circumstances, being mov'd with Compassion, did not only give him a very favourable Reception, but also granted him Permission, to levy what then he stood in need of, for his intended Expedition, in his Dominions. This Audience turn'd to the no small Advantage of *Demetrius*. For, it having been very industriously spread abroad, in what a favourable Manner he had been received by King *Sigismund*, this did not only much strengthen his Party in *Poland*, where a great many Persons of Quality espoused his Interest, but also had such a powerful Influence upon the *Muscovites*, that they began to exclaim at the Treacheries of *Boris*; and most of them out of Fear, others out of hope of Rewards, only stay'd for a favourable

Oppor-

Opportunity to declare for him, whom they now began to look upon as their Natural Prince.

*Demetrius* having soon got notice, how the *Muscovites* stood affected, and brought over to his Party by great Presents, some of the leading Men among them, thought it now high Time to put his long projected Design in Execution. The Weywode of *Sandomiria* had all this while been employed in raising considerable Forces in *Poland*, for this Expedition, and the Duke *Wisnowiski*, having also publickly declared for *Demetrius*, a considerable Number of the *Polish* Nobility, on the Frontiers of *Muscovy*, being encouraged by his Example, espoused this Interest. Being strengthened by these and other Forces, which were in several parts of the Kingdom, raised for his Service, he marched at the Head of them into *Muscovy*, in the heart of the Winter, where, being joyned by a Body of *Cossacks* of 10000 Men, under their General *Corclar*, who had been engaged with great Promises into his Service, by the Artifices of the old Monk, it struck such a Terror into the Inhabitants of the neighbouring Provinces, that, as soon as his Army had passed the *Boristhenes* at *Kiowia*, they advanced without any Opposition, to the very Walls of *Eringow*, which upon the first Summons surrendered to *Demetrius*. The City of *Puttiwall*, one of the largest and most populous in those Parts followed the Example of *Eringow*; the Garrison, which consisted for the most part of *Cossacks*, refused to fight against their Brethren. The other Places of less Note, trod the Footsteps of the others, and put themselves under his Protection; so that, as he was advancing deeper into the Country, his Army was considerably augmented by such as flock'd in to him from all the adjacent Cities, of which none attempted to make the least Resistance, except the City of *Novogorod Sevienski*, which he besieg'd and attack'd with all the Vigour imaginable. The Czar, *Boris Goudenon*, in the mean while had not been careless of his Affairs, but having ordered considerable

Demetrius enters  
Muscovy.

table Levies to be made before; as soon as he received Advice of the most stupendious Progress of *Demetrius*, he published his Declaration, wherein he promised Indemnity to all such of his Subjects as would abandon the Party of this Impostour, and return to their Duty, with most severe Comminations against all such as should persist in their treasonable Designs against their Sovereign, in aiding and assisting the pretended *Demetrius*. He sent also a solemn Ambassy to *Sigismund*, then King of Poland, who having immediately demanded and obtained Audience, made most heavy Complaints; That the Truce, which was so lately made betwixt the two Crowns for Twenty Years, was violated by the Poles, who without the least Reason given, had invaded the Czar's Territories, taken his Towns, and ravaged the Country: That he hoped the King would take better Measures, and not pursue a War that was founded upon nothing but an unjust Pretence, but recall his Troops, which were at that time employed to maintain the Pretensions of a vile Impostor, against one of the most potent Princes in Europe, who, if provoked, would not want means to give himself Satisfaction for the Damages and Affronts received from the Crown of Poland. Neither was he sparing in his Promises, by which, and the great Presents he made to most of the Chief Ministers and other great Men of the Court, he hoped to obtain what all his Remonstrances had not been able to effect, but in vain; for whether it were, that they look'd upon *Demetrius* as the true Heir of the Crown, and upon the Affairs of *Boris* as in a declining Condition, or that the Authority of the Pope and Jesuits who had espoused the Interest of the first, had made them deaf to all these Applications, the Ambassador was sent back with this general Answer: That the King and Commonwealth of Poland were not concerned in what was transacted in Muscovy; and that, if *Demetrius*, who was a Muscovite born, had obtained the Assistance of some Polish Volunteers to maintain his Pretensions against the Czar *Boris* Goudenou,



## The Antient and Present State

cerou, this could not be interpreted a Violation of the Truce betwixt the two Crowns, which on their side they would observe inviolably. Boris having missed his Aim in Poland, dispatched a Messenger to the Camp of *Demetrius*, to try once more his Fortune, and to endeavour to undeceive the Wayvode of *Sendomiria*, and *Wisnowiski*, concerning the Fallacy put upon them by the Counterfeit *Demetrius*. For this End having found out one of his Uncles in *Muscovy*, whose Name was *Smyrna Otropeja*, and judging, not without Reason, that if he could be confronted with *Grisko Otropeja*, his Nephew, his Confession would be of the greatest Consequence towards the Detecting of this Imposture; he sent him along with the Messenger: But whether the Wayvode look'd upon that as a Contrivance of *Boris Goudenou*, invented on purpose to blast the Reputation of *Demetrius*, and to ward the Blow which seemed to threaten his Ruin; or that he thought himself engaged past retreating; the Uncle, *Smyrna Otropeja* was forbid, under pain of Death, to approach the Camp, and the Messenger sent back with Scorn and Indignation.

*Boris Goudenou*, finding all other Means to fail, had Recourse to Arms, and ordered his Army, which consisted of above a Hundred thousand Men, most of them Veterane Soldiers, to march to the Relief of *Novogorod Sevierski*, which defended it self bravely against the *Poles*, under the Conduct of their Governour *Bosman*. *Demetrius*, tho' much inferiour in Number, (being not much above Twenty thousand, but all chosen Men) upon the Approach of the *Muscovite* Army, leaving the Siege of *Novogorod*, posted himself as advantageously as he could, in sight of the *Muscovites*, to facilitate the Passage of such Officers in the Army of *Boris Goudenou*, as being corrupted before, had promised to come over with their Soldiers to his Party. But these seeing the great Disproportion there was betwixt the Numbers of these two Armies, either quite changed their Resolutions, or at least thought

it most advisable to delay the Execution of it till a more favourable Juncture.

*Demetrius* therefore finding himself in a Post from whence he could not retreat without fighting, was forced to put the best Countenance he could upon the Matter, and having nothing to trust to but their own Courage, the *Poles* fought so bravely, that they not only repulsed the *Muscovites*, who being over confident in their Number attack'd them with more Fury than Skill, but also charged them at several times with so much bravery, that the Victory remain'd doubtful for several Hours; till at last the *Muscovites* being continually sustain'd by fresh Troops, and the *Poles* quite tired by the long Fatigues of the Day, were forced to give way, more to the Number than the Bravery of their Enemies, who at last entirely routed them, *Demetrius* (though not without a great Slaughter on their rout-side) killing 9000 of them upon the Spot, with ed the loss of all their Cannon and Baggage.

If the *Muscovites* had been as careful in the Pursuit of *Demetrius*, as they were fortunate in obtaining the Victory, and had sent their Horse (of which they had a considerable number) immediately after, to disperse such of the *Polish* Troops as were retreating in several Bodies towards *Ribscum*, they might without question have put an End to the War at this one Stroke, or at least have driven him quite out of *Muscovy*. But instead of pursuing their Advantage, they besieged *Krom*, which defending it self with an extraordinary Bravery; *Demetrius*, whilst these wasted themselves in the Siege of this Place, had full Leisure given him to rally his scattered Troops at *Ribscum*, and there to expect the Return of the *Waywode* and *Wisnowiski*, who were gone to their respective Countries to raise fresh Supplies for this Service.

Being at last made sensible of their Mistake, they resolv'd to send part of their Army to attack him under *Ribscum*, before he could be reinforced with such Auxiliaries as he expected to join his Forces,

## The Antient and Present State

The Army  
of Boris  
routed.

and to leave the rest to carry on the Siege of *Krom*. Pursuant to this Resolution, they sent Fifty thousand of their best Men to attack *Demetrius*, who with about six or seven Thousand, most Horse, the Remnants of his Army, had strongly intrenched himself under *Ribscum*. Having got timely Notice of the Approach of the Enemy, he detached a Thousand of his best Horse, to approach their Camp, and to get what Intelligence they could concerning the Posture of the Enemy, but these having sent out a more numerous Body of Horse to engage the *Demetrians*, there ensued a fierce Combat, both Parties being reinforced with fresh Supplies from their Camps: But the *Polish* Horse behaved themselves so gallantly, that after two Hours Engagement they totally routed the *Muscovites*, and closely pursuing them with a great slaughter to their Camp, where their Foot were just drawing up in order of Battle, to sustain their Horse, these pressed all in Confusion with such Violence upon their own Infantry, that they soon broke their Ranks, and brought the whole Army into such a Disorder, that *Demetrius*, who by this time was advanc'd with the Remainder of his Army, soon put them to the rout, and forced them to leave their Camp and Artillery, as a Reward of his Victory.

The Fame of so signal a Defeat having been soon spread all over the neighbouring Provinces, all the great Cities thereabouts declared for the Conquerour; the whole Province of *Severia*, one of the largest in all *Muscovy*, followed the Example of the rest, and furnished his victorious Army with all Necessaries, which by this sudden Change of Fortune, grew every day more numerous; those who hitherto out of Fear had been backward in declaring themselves, now striving to out-do one another, in giving the most evident Demonstrations of their Zeal for the Interest of the Victorious *Demetrius*.

*Boris*, on the other Hand, tho' not a little startled at so sudden an Accident, yet did not lose  
Cou-

Courage, but having rally'd his scatter'd Troops, and ordered new Levies to be made, he sent his Spies and Emisseries into the Camp of *Demetrius*, to try whether, by the hopes of Pardon and great Rewards; they could bring over the Revolted *Russians* to their Allegiance to him, and especially to entice the *Cossacks* from *Demetrius* to his Party, or whether by some means or other, they could not dispatch and send him to the other World. But some of these Emisseries being discovered, and put to the Torture, made an Ingenuous Confession of the Truth, and were without any further Punishment, sent back to *Boris*, with this Errand, that it was little becoming his present high Station, to make use of Poyson and Daggers against his Enemy, and that he did not question, but that before long, he should be ready to call him to a severe Account for this, as well as his other treacherous Devices; But that, if he would give him real Demonstrations of his sincere Repentance, by surrendering the Crown to him whose unquestionable Right it was, he would grant him, and all his Adherents a general Amnesty, for all past Crimes and Misdemeanours.

But *Boris* having rejected these Offers with Scorn, and yet seeing his Adversary encrease in Strength every day, he resolved to try the utmost, and whether by one dextrous Blow, he could not overthrow him and his Designs. He was not ignorant that the main strength of his Army consisted in the Auxiliaries and Supplies, he from time to time received out of *Poland*, and that if he could by any means, deprive him of his foreign Aids, the rest would soon disperse, or at least easily be reduced to obedience. He wisely considered, that, if a considerable Diversion could be procured to the *Poles* at home, they would be obliged to recall their Subjects out of the Service of *Demetrius*, who deprived of their Assistance, like a Body of its best Nourishment, would soon be reduced to a languishing Condition. But the circumstances of his Affairs, being such as not to permit him to attempt  
C 3 alone



## The Antient and Present State

alone this intended Diversion, a Treaty was set on foot with the *Swedish* and *Danish* Ambassadors, then residing in the City of *Musco*, to Embroil *Sigismund*, King of *Poland*, at his own doors, by the assistance of these two Crowns. But whilst they were busied in concerting measures to put this in Execution, and *Boris* apply'd his whole Care in resettling his Affairs, he was on a sudden, seiz'd with a most violent Chouck, which immediately after, being followed by a great quantity of Blood, which issued out of his Mouth, Ears and Nostrius, he died in an Instant; some say for Grief, some of an Apoplexy, others of Poyson by the Contrivances of *Demetrius*. However it was, he expir'd on the 13th of *April*, in the Year 1605, in the Seventh Year of his Reign. He shew'd so much Mildness and Moderation during the Time of his Government, that he might well be placed among the best of Princes, if he had not opened his way to the Throne of *Muscovy*, by the Murder of his lawful and natural Prince.

*The sudden Death of Boris Goudenou*

The sudden Death of *Boris Goudenou*, hapning at so critical a Juncture, when all his Friends had conceived great hopes of his intended Diversion against the *Poles*, put them under a great Consternation, and the greatest part of the Nobility and Army, looking upon this unexpected Change, as ominous to his Family, shew'd a great Inclination in Favour of *Demetrius*, whose Power began now to appear more formidable to them, than before; But the Populacy, who had as yet fresh in remembrance the Benefits received from *Boris Goudenou*, especially, during the great Famine, in the Years 1601, 1602, and 1603, declared for *Fedor* his Son, and having forced the Boyars and Chief Officers of the Army to do the same, he was placed in the Throne, and his Mother constituted Regent, during his Minority.

*His Son Fedor succeeds him.*

*Fedor* or *Theodore*, being thus mounted on the Throne, under the Tuition of his Mother, apply'd all his Care to stop the Progress of *Demetrius*, and having

having received Intelligence, that he intended suddenly to march to the Relief of *Krom*, which was still besieg'd by the *Muscovites*, he declared *Bosman*, who had so valiantly defended *Novogorod* in his Father's Time, General over his Army, which afterwards proved fatal to the whole *Borisian* Family. For *Hodmen*, a near Kinsman of *Boris Gondenov*, and General of his Forces during his Reign, having got timely notice of the Resolutions taken at Court, in favour of *Bosman*, by the powerful Influence he had over the principal Officers of the Army, soon prevail'd with them, to refuse to submit to the Command of *Bosman*, as a Soldier of fortune, which Affront, he dissimulated for a while, till he met with a favourable Opportunity to revenge it upon the whole Family of the Great Duke, as we shall see anon. In the mean while, *Demetrius* had commanded the greatest Part of his Army under the Conduct of *Zaporius*, to advance towards *Krom*, and endeavour its Relief, who having accordingly directed his March to the *Muscovian* Camp, he received Intelligence by the means of *Bosman*, of the Posture of the Enemy, and that he intended to come over to his Party, as soon as a favourable Opportunity should present. *Zaporius* being resolved to improve so advantageous an Offer, was impatient to come to Blows with the *Muscovites*; but these being both superior in Number, and strongly Entrench'd, and consequently not to be attack'd, without exposing the whole Army, he drew them out of their advantageous Entrenchments by the following Stratagem: He contrived a Letter, directed to the Governour and Chief Officers of the Garrison of *Krom*, wherein, after having highly extolled their Valour and Zeal, and made them ample Promises of Rewards, he told them, that he was advanced with a considerable Force near the Enemies Camp, to annoy them, and to intercept their Foragers, till the arrival of Prince *Demetrius* himself, who was on his March, at the Head of the *Cossacks*, and other Auxiliaries,

## The Antient and Present State

lately arrived from *Poland*, to oblige the *Muscovites* to raise the Siege. This Letter being given to one, who undertook to carry it into the Place, he was directed thus to the City, by the secret Orders of *Zaporius*, that he must of necessity fall into the Hands of the Enemy's advanced Guards; which having succeeded accordingly, the poor Fellow was carried before the *Muscovite* General; where having been examined, he was forced to produce the Letter, which, as he believ'd, was to have been carried into the City.

*Hodwen*, the General of the *Muscovite* Army, having perused the Letter, and over-joy'd at the Discovery of the approach of *Demetrius*, call'd immediately a Council of War, wherein it having been judged most convenient, to attack the Enemy before they could be join'd by *Demetrius*, it was resolved, to leave only a small Body to keep the Avenues leading to the Town, and with the rest to give Battle to *Zaporius*.

He soon perceiving by the Countenance of the Enemy, that his Design had thus far succeeded according to his wish, drew out his Forces in Battle-Array; but being much inferior in number, and fearing, not without Reason, lest *Bosman* with his Party, might be discouraged by the inequality of their Number, he resolved to back his Letter with a second Stratagem. He placed all the Servants, Suters, and other useless Persons belonging to the Baggage, at some distance behind the Army, with whom having join'd some Soldiers, enough to make up a Front, he order'd them, after they had seen him Engag'd for some time, to advance in good Order, with their Colours flying, Drums beating, and Trumpets sounding. Thus having prepared every thing according to his intended Purpose, he marched directly towards the *Muscovites*, whom he attack'd with the utmost Vigour; but these being without intermission re-inforced by fresh Troops, gave so much work to the *Poles*, that the Fight was very obstinate and bloody, and the

lat-

latter would have been in no small danger of losing the Day, had not *Bosman*, who Commanded the Body of Reserve in the *Muscovian* Army, as soon as he saw the *Polish* Mock Army advance, in the greatest heat of the Battle, with some of his Party, gone over to *Zaporius*, and declared for Prince *Demetrius*, crying out aloud to the *Muscovites*, that they should cease to fight against their Natural Prince. *Bosman* being the Darling of the common Soldiers, his Words and Example had such a powerful Influence over them, that like one Man, they cry'd, they would live and die with him.

The Nobility and Chief Officers of the Army, finding themselves deserted by the Soldiers, resolved immediately to send their Deputies to *Demetrius*, who at that time resided at *Puttimoll*, to acknowledge their Fault in having so long stood out against their Prince; to implore his Pardon for what was past, and to give him all the imaginable Assurances of their Fidelity, for the future. *Demetrius* transported with Joy at so welcome a piece of News, lost no time, but having immediately put himself at the Head of such Troops as he had with him at *Puttimoll*, march'd directly first to *Krom*, where he caus'd *Hodwen*, the *Muscovian* General to be clapt in Irons, and from thence to *Avol*, where the revolted Army lay Encamped; Being arriv'd there, and having received fresh Demonstrations of their entire Submission to his Commands, he offer'd his Thanks to the Chief Men, but especially to *Bosman* and his Friends, and by his Caresses, so gain'd upon the Affections of the common Soldiers, that they all with one Voice, desired him to Lead them against the Son of the Usurper of his Crown.

Being thus become absolutely Master of the Field and the Army, and believing that now, he had but one step left to ascend the Throne, to wit, to make himself Master of the City of *Musco*, the Capital of the whole Empire, he order'd every thing to be got ready for the March. Whilst he was thus

The Muscovites revolt.



## The Antient and Present State

advancing by slow Marches towards *Masco*, he sent his Letters to the Magistrates of that City, wherein he told them, he was near at hand with a most Potent Army, ready to attack them at his first Command ; but that taking commiseration of their Condition, he exhorted them to make choice of the fruits of Peace before the inevitable Calamities of War. That if they preferred the last before the first, they must be answerable for all the Miseries, which are the necessary Consequences of an intestine War ; but as he was persuaded they would consult their own Safety, he advised them to root out the whole Progeny of that accursed Traytor, *Boris Goudenou*, who had murder'd his Brother, the late Great Duke *Fedor*, and would have acted the same Tragedy with himself, if it had not been prevented by the Vigilancy and Care of his Royal Mother ; and lastly, not to delay any longer to shew their Readiness in Asserting the undoubted Right of their Natural Prince.

This Letter having been read in the Presence of the People and the Messenger of *Demetrius* in the Market-place, they began to assemble in great Numbers, and after a short Consultation what Measures were best to be taken, they sent some among them to the Palace of *Knez Basilizuski*, who having peremptorily demanded of him to declare before them, whether this were the true *Demetrius*, Youngest Son of Czar *John Basilovits*, that lay now encamped near their City, *Zuski* positively asserted, that he was ; and that he had been saved from the Assassins sent by *Boris Goudenou* for his Destruction, by the Prudence of his Mother, who had put another in his stead. The People absolutely relying upon what they had understood from a Person of so eminent a Rank, and who himself in Person had been employed by *Boris*, to take care of the Funeral of *Demetrius*, and dreading, besides this, a potent Army so near their Gates, cry'd out with one Voice, *Long live Demetrius, Great Duke, and Emperor of Russia ! Come let us destroy that viperous Brood of the Goudenou's.*

Their

Musco de-  
clares for  
them.

Their Words were soon seconded with Blows ; for having soon forced some of *Fedor's* Guards, that were come to appease the Tumult , to retire, they went streightways to the Castle, and sacrificing all to their Fury, that opposed their Passage, they entred the Royal Palace, where they massacred most of the Friends and Relations of *Boris* ; the rest they stript stark naked and shut them up in a Fort within the Castle, Men, Women and Children, without distinction of Age or Sex, where they perished in a most miserable manner , either by Cold or Famine , none of the Kindred of *Boris* escaping their Fury, except the Great Duke *Fedor*, the Empress Regent and her Daughter , who were preserved, not out of any Esteem for their Dignity or Persons , but wherewith to purchase their Pardon from *Bemetrius*.

The Empress Dowager was a Lady of a Masculine Spirit and undaunted Courage , who, when she reflected upon the Barbarities committed against the whole Family of her deceased Lord, was soon convinced, that she and her Children were only reserved for to adorn the Triumph of *Demetrius*, and to serve as a Pledge of the Fidelity of these barbarous Wretches, who being void of all Humanity, had made such bloody Returns to the Family of him from whose Hands they had received so many signal Benefits. She had therefore prepared a Cup filled with strong Poison , and proposing no less to herself and her two dear Children, than the most ignominious Death that could be invented by the enraged Conquerour, with a most Heroick Constancy, Come , says she, Come, the dearest Pledges of your Father's Love , Come, once my greatest Joy, but now my highest Grief, let us not linger out for a few Days a miserable Life, by a more miserable Delay , till the Tyrant have found the Way to destroy us more ignominiously ; Let us by our own Choice accelerate that fatal Separation which is prepared for us by the Hands of our merciless Enemies. She had no sooner spoke these last Words

but

The Death  
of Fedor  
and the  
Empress.

but she took the Cup, and, having taken a good draught of this poisonous Potion, she forced her Children to take the rest of the fatal Liquor, and then grasping them both in her Arms, they thus expired in their mutual Embraces; after the young Fedor had sat scarce two Months upon the Throne.

There are not a few who affirm, that the Princess only poisoned herself, but being preserved by Demetrius's Order, to satisfy his Lust, was afterward by his secret Order strangled with both her Children and that it was only given out they had poisoned themselves. But the first Relation seems the most probable, this beforementioned Tragedy having been acted on the tenth day of June, in the Year 1605, several Days before Demetrius came into the City of Musco.

Demetrius proclaimed Emperor.

Whilst the Populacy exercised their Barbarities upon the Remnant of the Family of the Gondeonovs, Demetrius having been advertised of what had passed in the City by their Deputies, who told him that they were ready to receive him, he ordered every thing to be prepared for his Reception against the 20th of June, when he was met at two or three Miles Distance from the City, not only by the Magistrates, but also most of the Nobility on Horseback, and having thus made his Solemn Entrance thro' the Crowds and Acclamations of the People, and been proclaimed Emperor of all Russia; he took up his Residence the same Night in the Royal Palace.

This solemn Entrance into the City, was not long after followed by his Coronation, which was performed, with the usual Solemnities, towards the latter end of the next following Month, with the loud and joyful Acclamations of the People, *Long live Demetrius, God save our Great Duke, May all his Enemies perish!*

But Demetrius, who had now assumed the Surname of Ivanovits, from his pretended Father, the Great Duke Ivan or John Basilovits, judging,

not without Reason, that scarce any thing would contribute more at this time to strengthen his Title, and put his Birth beyond all question, than if he were acknowledged by the Mother of the true *Demetrius*, who had been murdered at *Uglerz*, he sent to her a Messenger with secret Dispatches to the Monastery where she had been shut up for seven Years last past, inviting her to the City of *Musco*, and the Royal Palace. She, who saw her self thus at once freed from so long a Confinement, and at the same time put in a Condition to revenge her self of the Barbarities committed against her Family by the Treachery of *Boris Goudenon*, accepted these Offers without the least Reluctancy.

As She was approaching the City of *Musco* with a most magnificent Train. *Demetrius* her pretended Son, met her at five or six Miles distance from the City, and as soon as he espied the Coach wherein she was, dismounted, and came up to salute her on foot and bare-headed. At their Meeting, after the most tender Expressions, he shewed her all the Marks of Respect due from a Son to his Mother in a private Condition, and as he revered her with a more than filial Duty, so she received him with all possible Demonstrations of a most tender and sincere Affection, their mutual Caresses and Embraces being accompanied with Tears. She urg'd him several times to come into her Coach, which he as often refused, and would walk by, on foot and bare-headed, till the Empress telling him that she would do the same if he did not gratifie her in her Request, with much ado, perswaded him to remount his Horse. Thus having conducted her to the Palace, they renewed their former Tenderness, by Embracing and all the most sincere Demonstrations of mutual Satisfaction in the Presence of the whole Court. All these things being transacted in the Face of the World, appear'd to the People the most evident Proofs that could be given of the reality of his Birth, as being founded upon the publick Confession of the same Person  
that



## The Antient and Present State

that bare him; so that the *Russians* seem'd so generally satisfied concerning the Reality of his Extraction, that by the common Consent of the whole Nation, it was put beyond all question.

But *Demetrius* had not many Months enjoyed the Royal Dignity and the Affections of his Subjects, before the Chief of the Nobility ( who had always entertained some Jealousies concerning the Legality of his Title and Extraction ) began to perceive his manner of Life to be far different from that of the Great Dukes, his Predecessors; some of the most refined among them, discerning in his whole Behaviour a certain Lightness, not bearing the least proportion to the Grandeur of his High Station; and tho' they knew him to be endowed with a ready Wit, and a sufficient Stock of Courage, yet had they observed in all his Transactions, but a very slender share of Judgment, especially in the Management of Publick Affairs relating to the Empire. The Common People, whose Judgment seldom reaches further than the out-side of things, having observed his Habit, Manners and Gestures, to be wholly Foreign, concluded his Inclinations to be the same. For he frequently used to appear in *Polish* and other Foreign Habits, he seldom bathed, and scarce ever slept after Dinner, according to the general Custom of the *Muscovites*, he would carry his Dogs along with him into the *Muscovite* Churches, he would eat Calves Flesh, and not bow to *St. Nicholas*, all which being abominable to the *Russians*, a People superstitious to a degree of Madness, contributed not a little to the Hatred which the Populacy conceived against his Person. But what most enflamed both the Nobility and People was, that they saw their immense Treasures wasted in a few Months, among his Players, Parasites, and Mimicks, who made it their whole Business to flatter and encourage him in his Debaucheries, to which he was naturally inclined; which made him neglect the Management of Publick Affairs,

Affairs and commit the Administration of Justice to Foreigners. They saw the Jesuits erect most magnificent Churches and Dwelling-places, and the Great Duke himself, not only to follow the *Romish* Perswasion, but also publickly to despise the *Greek* Church, and to endeavour to introduce the *Latin*; by all which he drew upon himself the Scorn of the Nobility and the Hatred of the People.

But nothing contributed so much to his Destruction, as his final Resolution of Marrying a *Roman* Catholick; *Demetrius*, as we have mentioned before, had made his Address, in *Poland*, to *Marina* <sup>Misim.</sup> the Daughter of *George Mniszeck*, Weywode of *Sandomiria*; and, among other Articles, it was agreed betwixt them, That after his Accession to the Crown of *Muscovy*, he should marry the Weywode of *Sandomiria*'s Daughter, and introduce the *Roman* Catholick Religion into that Empire. No sooner had *Demetrius* ascended the Throne, but as he discharged his Promise, in reference to the *Romish* Clergy, unto whom he gave publickly all the Encouragement and Protection he could, much more than was consistent with his real Interest; so he resolv'd both to gratifie his Passion, and to acquit himself of his Word to the Weywode, in regard of the fair *Marina*.

There were not a few of his *Muscovian* Boyars (among whom *Bosman* was the Chief) who being entirely devoted to his Interest, took the Liberty to remonstrate to him how little suitable these Measures he took, especially in respect of his Marriage, and the *Romish* Religion, were to the present State of his Affairs; they represented to him, That the *Muscovites* being addicted to their own Religion to the highest degree of Superstition, had always entertained a mortal Hatred against those of the *Romish* Perswasion; That it had for many Years past been look'd upon as one of the fundamental Maxims of State, for the Great Dukes of *Russia*, not to enter into any Foreign Alliance by Marriage,

Marriage, but to chuse their Spouses among their own Subjects; That, when the *Muscovites* should perceive him to act, in Matters of the greatest Moment, against their most Ancient Customs, and contrary to the general Inclinations of the People, they would soon be prevailed upon to give ear to the Suggestions of his Enemies, who would not fail to make use of these specious Pretences to alienate the Hearts of the People from him, to his Destruction. But *Demetrius* was so far from being convinced by these Reasons, tho' never so solid, that on the contrary he persisted in his former Resolution of marrying *Marina* the Daughter of the Weywode of *Sandomiria*.

If we curiously reflect upon the Course of Humane Affairs in this World, we may without much difficulty be convinc'd, that Honour and Riches are not always the Reward of a sublime Genius and Industry, but frequently the Consequences of a lucky Hit. Nay, it is often observ'd, that a fortunate Man, at a certain Nick of Time, is elevated by an unaccountable Concatenation of lucky Accidents, which at another Juncture prove his Destruction. *Demetrius* may well pass for one of the most remarkable Instances of this Assertion that ever was heard of; For, as he owed his Advancement to the Throne of *Muscovy* to Fortune and the giddy multitude, so was he by the same means, that hath rais'd him to the highest Pinnacle of Glory, hurried on to his own Ruin, and precipitated into the lowest Abyss of Misery.

A Conspira-  
cy against  
Demetri-  
us.

*Knez Basili-zuski* (whom we have mentioned before to have been consulted by the Citizens of *Muscovy*, concerning the legality of the Birth of this *Demetrius*) was the first that declared his Opinion to some other *Muscovite* Lords, as well Ecclesiastical as Secular, in whom he most confided; and, after having remonstrated to them the danger whereto the State and Religion were exposed, by the Alliance which this pretended *Demetrius*, intended to make with a foreign Lady of the *Roman Catholic* Perswa-

Perſwaſion; he told them, what he had formerly declared to the People in reference to his Birth, had been done partly with a Deſign to make uſe of this *Demetrius*, as a fit Inſtrument, to revenge upon the Family of *Boris Goudenon*, the treacherous Cruelties committed by him againſt the two Sons of the Grand Duke *John Baſilovitz*; partly to avoid the Fury of the Multitude, who, he fear'd, would have involved him in the ſame Ruin with the Family of the *Goudenon's*; but that he knew him to be an Impoſtor, he himſelf (as they all knew) having had the management of the Funeral Obſequies of the Body of the true *Demetrius*, who was certainly murder'd at *Uglers*. That therefore, they ſhould not be longer impoſed upon by this Upſtart Counterfeit, but take ſuch meaſures as might moſt effectually ſecure their Religion, and Government, and the Lives of themſelves and their Families from that imminent Danger which threatened the whole Empire, with an unavoidable Ruin, if not prevented by their Prudence and Courage.

This Declaration of *Zuski* had ſo powerful an Influence over all thoſe that were preſent, that it was unanimouſly agreed, that this Impoſtor ſhould be ſent to the other World with the firſt Opportunity.

But the main thing which rendred their Deſign very difficult, if not quite impracticable, was his *Polish* Guards, and other foreign Auxiliaries; To remove this Obſtacle, it was cunningly inſinuated to *Demetrius*, by ſome that were near his Perſon, that the *Muscovites*, could not but be extremely ſenſible of the Miſtruſt he ſhew'd of them, in committing the Guard of his Perſon, rather to the *Poles*, and other foreign Auxiliaries, than to his own Natural Subjects, who had given ſo lately the moſt real Demonſtrations of their Zeal and Affection for his Perſon and Government; that they muſt needs look with an ill Eye upon theſe Foreigners, as being the Cauſe of their being thus neglected by the Grand Czar, for whom they were rea-



dy to Sacrifice their Lives, and all what was dear to them, whenever he would be pleased to make use of their Service. *Demetrius* thus unwarily, suffering himself to be Cajol'd into an Opinion of their Stedfastness to his Service, being deluded by this outward shew of their Affection to him, resolved wholly to rely upon the Fidelity of his Subjects, and contrary to the Advice of all his Friends, dismissed both his foreign Guards and Auxiliaries.

The Conspirators having thus surmounted the main Obstacle, and being encouraged by this happy Success, began by degrees to communicate their Design to others; and, after they had drawn a considerable Number of Accomplices into the Conspiracy, concerted measures, how to put the intended Assassination in execution. But many being made privy to the Design, it was not carried on so secretly, but that *Demetrius* got scent of it, who having caused some of the Accomplices to be apprehended, and Tortured, they discovered the whole Plot to have been projected and managed by *Basil-zuski*.

The Con-  
spiracy dis-  
covered.  
He being soon apprehended, and having at the first sight of the Rack, confessed the whole Truth, was condemned to lose his Head.

*Demetrius* being now too late convinced of his Mistake of dismissing his foreign Guards, call'd a Cabinet Council of his most intimate Friends, to consult with them concerning the present Emergency of his Affairs, who were unanimously of Opinion, that he should not spare any of the Heads of this Conspiracy, but by bringing them all to condign Punishment, would strike such a Terror into the rest, as not to dare for the future to embark in such ill Designs. They represented to him, how that *Zuski* being by his Mothers side ally'd to the Great Duke of *Muscovy*, and a Man of a very aspiring Temper, did without question aim at the Crown, and therefore it behoved him to secure himself against so dangerous a Rival, now Fortune had put it into his Hands, and he had the fairest

fairest in the World of putting an End to his Ambition, without the least blame of Injustice. But *Demetrius*, as if hurried on by some fatal Stupidity to his own Destiny, was for chusing the milder Way; and, when *Zuski* was upon the Scaffold, ready to receive the fatal Blow, not only sent him his Pardon, but soon after received him into his particular Favour, vainly imagining to engage him thereby to espouse his Interest for the future.

For, *Basili-Zuski* was so far from acknowledging the Benefit received at his Hands, that on the contrary, his Ambition being now back'd by Revenge, he fully resolv'd to encompass his Design, and to find out means to dispatch this Impostor, in spite of all the Obstacles that might fall in his way. For which Reason he invited the most Eminent *Knez* and *Boysars*, whom he knew to be of his Party, to his House, and having again represented to them the present dangerous Condition of the Empire under the Counterfeit *Demetrius*, who had introduced Heresie, and trampled both upon the Laws and Religion of their Ancestors. That it would be unbecoming their Courage to see themselves thus abused by an Impostor imposed upon them by the *Poles*, who would, if not soon prevented, before long make *Muscovy* a Province of *Poland*; But that, as he was ready to sacrifice once more his Life, and what else was dearest to him for the preservation of his native Country, so he did not question their chearful Concurrence and Assistance in a matter, from whence depended the Welfare both of themselves and their Posterity. The whole Assembly, after having given their hearty Thanks to *Zuski* for his Zeal in the common Cause, solemnly promised to assist him to the utmost of their Power in his laudable Design, and to be ready at hand, whenever he should meet with a favourable Opportunity of putting it in Execution; There were not a few among them, who were of Opinion, that the Tyrant ought to be dispatch'd immediately, and that Delays of this nature, did often prove dangerous;

A second  
Conspiracy  
against  
*Demetrius*  
us.

but the Arguments of the wiser Sort prevail'd, by whose Advice the Execution of it was delay'd, till the Celebrating of the Nuptials of *Demetrius* with *Marina*. There were several pregnant Reasons alledged for this Delay: Considering that they had not all their Friends ready at hand, who in the mean while, under pretence of assisting at the Nuptial Solemnity might meet all together in the City of *Musco*, without the least Suspicion; besides that, whilst they were at Court, taken up with their Jollities, they might with the less Difficulty put their Design in execution. There was also another Reason no less prevailing than the rest, which was, that after the arrival of the Bride, they were in hopes to recover the Crown Jewels, which were sent to her as a Present into *Poland*.

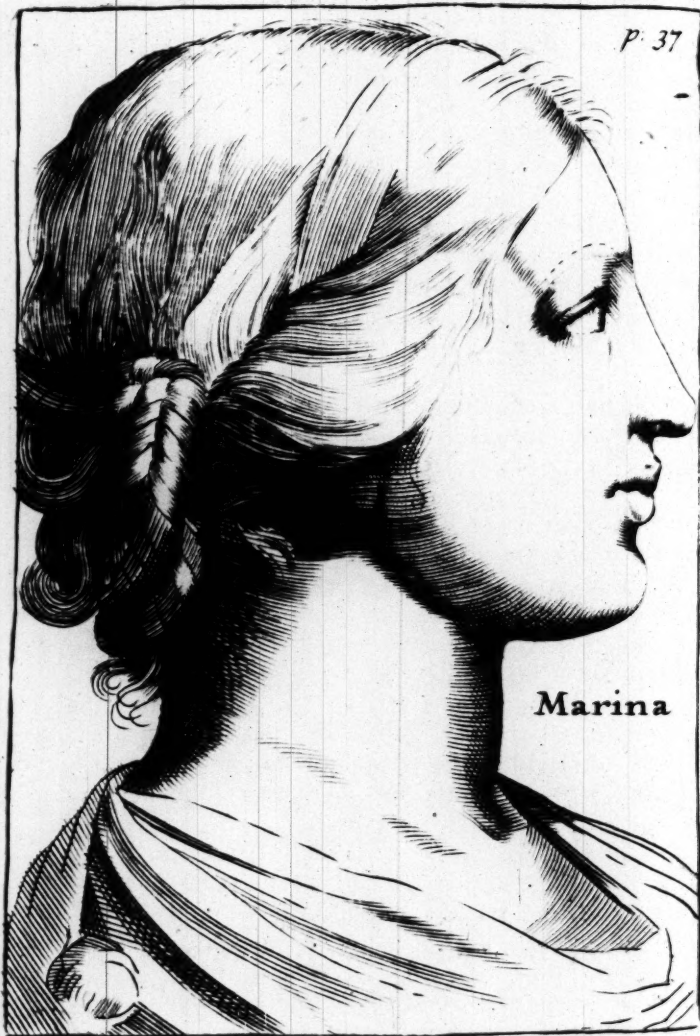
For *Demetrius*, soon after his Coronation had sent a most splendid Embassy to the King and Commonwealth of *Poland*, to conclude a League defensive and offensive with that Crown, and to desire the King's Consent, to marry the Lady *Marina* his Vassal, the Weywode of *Sandomiria*'s Daughter. The King of *Poland* having deferr'd his Resolution as to the proposed Alliance, till the meeting of the next Dyet, did without much difficulty consent to the Marriage of *Demetrius* with *Marina*. But to give her the most real demonstrations of his Passion, and to acquit himself in part of those Obligations he had received from her Father's hands, who had been the main Instrument in his Advancement to the Imperial Dignity, he now was possess'd of, he sent to his Admir'd *Marina*, the greatest part of the Crown Jewels of *Muscovy*, as the first Pledge of his Constancy, and to make her the more sensible, what share he intended her both in his Heart and Crown.

It is no difficult matter to guess, that *Marina*, who was Naturally of a very haughty Temper, being Courted at so high a rate, was not long in Suspence, whether she should comply with her Father's Inclinations, and the Desires of her Lover,





P. 37



Marina

so that within few days after, the Nuptial Ceremonies were performed by proxy in the City of *Cracow*, with all the Pomp imaginable in the presence of the King, and a considerable number of other Persons of the first Rank. After some time spent in Feasting, Balls, and other such like Divertisements, the Bride, after having taken her Leave of the King, and the whole Court of *Poland*, set out from *Cracow* towards the latter end of *January*, in the Year 1606, being accompany'd by the Ambassadors of *Muscovy* and *Poland*, by Duke *Constantine Wisnowski*, and her Father, besides a great many other Persons of eminent Quality in *Poland*, on her Journey to the City of *Musco*; where being met at some Miles distance by the whole Court, and in great Splendor, with the ringing of Bells, and the discharge of the great Cannons of the Castle, through an infinite number of People, and conducted to the Palace Royal; she was there received by *Demetrius*, with all the highest demonstrations of Joy, that could be given by the most passionate Lover in the World.

A few days after, they were married by the Patriarch, and the Church Ceremonies being ended, were reconducted with all the Pomp imaginable to the Palace Royal, where the succeeding Night was spent in Feasting, Dancing, Masquerades, and other such like Diversions, with a Magnificence suitable to the present Occasion, and the Grandeur of so Illustrious a Company. The same were continued for several following days and nights, with all the Excess, Profuseness and Pomp that could be invented, till the sixteenth day of *May*, the fatal Eve of the ensuing Tragedy, which put an end to the Life of *Demetrius*, and the Greatness and Enjoyment of *Marina*.

For as we have mentioned before, *Knez Bassili Zuski*, and his Accomplices, having delay'd the Execution of their Design till the Nuptials of *Demetrius*, had in the mean while, by the assistance of his two Brothers, *John* and *Bogdan*, and some other

*Muscovian* Lords, engag'd in the Conspiracy, conveyed some thousands of Men, by degrees, and unobserved into the City of *Musco*, to be ready at hand, at certain places, appointed for that Purpose, as occasion should require. Being thus prepar'd, they pitch'd upon the sixteenth of *May*, which being a Day appointed for an Extraordinary Feast in the Castle, was consequently spent in all sorts of Jollities and Divertisments; the Guards being even dismissed upon this extraordinary Oocasion, from their Duty: So that, every thing conspiring to facilitate the Design of the Conspirators, it was resolved among them, that at the closing of the Feast, when the whole Court should be buried in strong Liquor, and Sleep, should be the beginning of the Tragedy they intended to act the next Morning. The very same Night there happned a certain Accident, which had been likely to have once more spoil'd their whole Design.

For a certain young Fellow who was privy to the Conspiracy, drinking with some of the Guards, and being elevated by the Force of the strong Liquor, had unwarily let fall some Words in his Discourse concerning this intended Conspiracy, whereupon, being seized and brought before *Demetrius*, he order'd him immediately to be put to the Rack, to extort from him the whole truth of the Design. But some of the *Muscovian* Lords, who were concern'd in the Plot, and in the most imminent Danger that could be of being discovered, told the Grand Duke, that it was easily to be seen, that the young Fellow's Brains were intoxicated by the Strength of the *Aqua viva*, and that therefore it would be a Madness to make the least Reflection upon what he said while he was drunk. *Demetrius*, hurried on by his malignant Fate to his approaching Destiny, being also hot-headed with the great quantity of Wine he had drank that Day, followed the deceitful Advice of his mortal Enemies, and dismissed the young Fellow for time, with an Intention to have him further examined the next day,

without

without taking the least Precaution against the Attempts of his Enemies.

But the Conspirators had no sooner received Intelligence of what had passed in the Castle, and how narrowly they had escaped being discovered, immediately prepared themselves to execute their Design, without any further Delay. For this purpose they had before Break of Day possess'd themselves of the most considerable Parts and Avenues of the City, which done, they caused the great Bell (the common Signal of Alarms) to be toll'd, and most horrible Out-cries to be made in the Market-place and adjacent Streets, that the *Poles*, who were lately come along with the Grand Dutchess, were in Arms, with an Intention to Massacre all the Inhabitants of the City. The Citizens being soon awaked by those dreadful Apprehensions, with the Assistance of the Conspirators, who had dispersed themselves into those parts of the Town where the *Poles* were lodged, fell instantly upon the *Poles* in their Quarters, who being all drunk and asleep in their Beds, they kill'd most of them before they could be sensible of their Danger.

The Beginning of their projected Design having thus succeeded according to Wish, *Knez Basil-Zuski* at the Head of this Party and a vast number of People, having by the Massacre of the *Poles* secured themselves against all Opposition, marched directly with their Scymeters in their Hands towards the Castle, where they found every thing in a profound Silence and Security; every Soul there being overwhelmed with Sleep, Weariness and strong Liquor, to that Degree, that the Conspirators were advanced to the Gates of the Royal Palace before they took the Alarm within. *Demetrius*, being one of the first that awaken'd by the Noise and Out-cries of those that were Massacring all they met within the Castle, got to one of the Windows, and having soon understood the true Meaning of this Tumult, he call'd to *Bosman* and some other Gentlemen of his Bed-Chamber, that were near at hand, who having



## The Antient and Present State

taken what Weapons they could meet with, on a sudden, endeavoured to stop the Fury of those who press'd forward to enter the Great Duke's Apartment, *Demetrius* himself appearing among them, arm'd with a Halbard, wherewith he dispatched some of the most forward of the Conspirators; but some of them being provided with Pistols and Muskets, they discharged so furiously upon the Great Duke and his Company, that most of them being slain, (among whom was *Bosman*, who was stabb'd with a Dagger,) *Demetrius* was forced to retire, and being pursued from Chamber to Chamber, at last threw himself out of the Window, down into one of the Courts, from whence, tho' sorely bruised, he at last got into the Fortress of the Castle guarded by *Muscovites*.

The Conspirators being enraged at their having miss'd their Prey, fell a ransacking the Great Dukes Apartment, and forcing their Way with their Scymeters thro' the Bodies of a few Attendants that were left, entered the Grand Duke's Bed-Chamber, whither all the *Polish* Ladies of Quality were retired, and at the Approach of the *Muscovites*, appeared half dead and immovable, like Statues, for fear, not being able to utter one Word, unless it were a certain ancient Lady, who somewhat more confident than the rest, by reason of her great Age, answered the *Muscovian* Lords that were enquiring where the Great Dutcheß was? *That at the beginning of the Tumult she had found means, to get away as she believed, to her Father's Palace.* Having search'd all over the Room, and not being able to find her, they were resolv'd to try whether they could put Life into the Ladies, and restore to them that Natural Motion they had lost by this sudden Consternation, and so to work they went, every one catching hold of her he liked best; and thus having satisfied their brutish Lust, they were going to leave the Room, in further Pursuit after *Demetrius*. It is to be observed that among all the Ladies that were there,

there, but two escaped their Violences; the first was the Lady Palatine of *Lamoc*, we mention'd before, secured more by her Wrinkles and Grey Hair than out of any Respect to her Person; and another Lady that sat very sick in a large Elbow-Chair, One of the *Muscovian* Lords, as they were Just going out, hapning to cast his Eyes that way, observ'd some Motion behind that Chair, and being curious to know the Meaning of it, advanced that Way, where having pulled up the Hangings he discovered the poor affrighted *Marina*; who as she was of an extraordinary Presence of Mind, look'd upon them with so Majestick an Air, that they all withdrew without offering any further Violence.

By this time, the Conspirators being advertis'd that *Demetrius* had saved himself among the *Muscovites* that guarded the Fortrefs of the Castle, they march'd thither and attack'd the Fort with the utmost Fury; but these within being encouraged by the Presence of *Demetrius*, who notwithstanding the Violent Bruises occasioned by his leaping out of the Widow, fought in this Extremity like a Lion, with a Resolution rather to die with his Scymeter in his Hand than to be expos'd to the Scorn of his Enemies, they were repuls'd with great Slaughter; but their Strength increasing with their Number, they renew'd the Assault several times, but were as often repuls'd, till the Garrison by their Threats was at last prevail'd upon to surrender the unfortunate *Demetrius* into their Hands.

From thence they led him, after they had put a ragged Coat about him, thro' the Streets of the City in Triumph, under the Imprecations and Scorns of the Rabble, who pointed Fingers into his very Eyes, pluck'd him by the Nose and Chin, asking him whether he was now *Demetrius* or *Grisko*? All which he bore with a most admirable Constancy, nor so much as uttering one Word, and scarce changing his Countenance. But coming near the Market-place, and perceiving a great

*Demetrius led in Triumph.*

## The Antient and Present State

great number of the dead Bodies of the *Poles* slain by the *Muscovites*, wallowing in their own Blood, he could not refrain from shedding of Tears, expressing a greater Sense of their Sufferings than his own; telling them, that if they would but have spared his Friends, he should not have grumbled at his own Fate, tho' perhaps the most severe, and not to be parallel'd in History, as being their lawful Sovereign, and Youngest Son to their Grand Duke *John Basilovits*; for the Confirmation of which he would appeal to his Mother.

The People being not a little startled at his resolute Behaviour, began to abate of their former Fierceness, and having sent *Knez Basili-Zuski* to the Empress Dowager, to learn from her own Mouth the whole Truth of the Matter, he return'd soon after with this Answer; *That the Empress Dowager, his pretended Mother, had declared to him, upon the Cross, that he was no Son of hers; and what she had done before, in acknowledging him as such, had been done, partly to obtain her Freedom, and partly to revenge her self upon the Family of Boris Goudenou for the Murder of her Son Demetrius.*

Deme-  
trius kill'd.

This Answer having been soon spread among the People, a certain *Muscovite* thronging thro' the Croud that surrounded *Demetrius*, with his Pistol ready cock'd in his Hand, and coming up close to him, *Thou infamous Traitor*, said he, *take the Reward of thy Imposture*, and so shot him thro' the Heart that he fell dead the same Instant at his Feet, those that stood nearest, wounding the dead Carcass with their Scymeters and Pikes, and after they had stript and mangled it so as scarce to be known, dragg'd it thro' the Streets of the City, and committed all manner of Barbarities upon the dead Body of the same Person, whom within a few Months before they both dreaded and adored.

Thus was the Splendor of the Nuptials darkned by the fatal End of *Demetrius*, who after he had scarce tasted the Sweets of a Diadem, and the Joys  
of

of a fair Bride, was snatch'd away from both by the same Fate, that, not many Months before, had exalted him to this sublime Station, on purpose as it seems, to make his fall the more conspicuous.

It is a controverted Point to this day, not only among a great many of the *Russians*, but especially betwixt the *Poles* and *Swedes*, whether he was an Impostor or not. The *Swedes*, who were engag'd on *Boris Goudenow's* and *Basili-Zuski's* side, strenuously maintain the first, and for the Confirmation of this their Opinion, alledge, that it was put beyond all question by the Evidence of the Empress Dowager, and *Basili-Zuski* himself, who managed the Funeral Solemnities of the true *Demetrius*, slain at *Ugletz*, and asserted that he was certainly murdered by the Assassins sent for that purpose by *Boris Goudenow*; and that the owning of this Impostor to be the true *Demetrius* by *Zuski*, proceeded from his fear of being Massacred by the People, as that of the Empress owes its Origin to the Obligation she had to him for her Liberty and the Satisfaction she received of being revenged of the *Borisan* Family. The *Poles*, on the other hand, who sided with this *Demetrius*, assert the contrary, affirming, that what the *Swedes* relate of him, is founded merely upon Hear-say, suggested by his Enemies, on purpose to encompass their Designs of snatching the Crown from the true Family of the Great Duke *Basilovits*; That the *Swedes*, who were not concern'd so nearly in the Matter as the *Poles*, and that not till several years after the Fray was begun, ought not to be look'd upon as competent Judges of this Controversie; That it would be ridiculous to suppose, that so many Persons of Quality in *Poland*, and the King himself could be thus imposed upon; that it was not very likely, that the Weywode of *Sandomiria*, would have thus engag'd in his Interest, and promised him his Daughter in Marriage, if, besides the great Resemblance he had with that *Demetrius* at *Ugletz*, he had



had not had very evident Proofs of the reality of his Extraction. That the first Declaration of the Empress Dowager, was without question real, and that the pretended denial made afterwards to *Basili-Zuski*, concerning this *Demetrius*, was extorted from her by Fear; besides that, it was only founded upon the Faith of *Basili-Zuski*, who, as it sufficiently appear'd afterwards, was his Rival for the Crown of *Muscovy*, and succeeded him in the Empire.

But we must pursue our Tragedy, which did not end with the Death of *Demetrius*; For, there being a considerable number of *Poles* quartered in the more remote Parts of the City, who being involved in Drink and Sleep, had not as yet heard the least Tidings of what had past in and about the Castle; and the *Muscovites* fearing, not without Reason, that if they should take the Alarm upon so surprising an Occasion, they would sell their Lives at a very dear rate, they resolved to draw them into the Trap, before they could have any notice of this Accident. For this purpose, certain Messengers were dispatch'd with counterfeit Orders from *Demetrius*, to appear forthwith in the Castle without their Arms, the Grand Duke being resolved, that at the Day of a general Rejoycing, nothing of Terror should appear at his Nuptials. The *Poles*, not suspecting the concealed Fraud of this deceitful Message, came forth without their Arms, thus tamely exposing themselves to the Slaughter, which was executed upon them with a more than barbarous Cruelty, very few escaping the hands of the bloody *Muscovites*, except some Gentlemen of Quality, who having scatter'd some Money among the Rabble, had thereby an Opportunity given them to gather into a small Body, and to hew'd their Way thro' their Enemies, till they came to the Palace of *George Mniszeck*, Weywode of *Sandomiria*, Father-in-Law to the Great Dutchess, where was also the Duke *Wisnowiski*, and some other *Polish* Lords, who having opened their way  
by

by their Scymiters to this Palace, which was pretty strong, were resolved to defend it to the utmost, and at least not to sell their Lives at a cheap rate. Neither was it long before they saw themselves surrounded on all sides by an infinite number of their Enemies, who with great Fury attack'd them on all sides, but with little Success, for, the *Poles* having no other Sanctuary left them, fought like desperate Men, and as often as they were attack'd by the Enemies, drove them back with a great Slaughter, so that at last their Fury being quell'd by the difficulty of the Enterprize, and the Blood of their Comerades, they thought fit to leave the *Poles*, who thus saved themselves by their own Bravery, by giving such Testimonies of their Courage to the *Muscovites*, as made them sufficiently sensible that if the rest of the *Poles* had been alive, they would not have rid themselves at so cheap a rate of *Demetrius*, and that they were more beholding to the Conduct of *Zuski*, than their own Courage for the Success of this Conspiracy. To revenge themselves of the Affront received at the beforementioned Palace, they fell upon the Jewellers, and other foreign Merchants that were lodged up and down the City, of whom they kill'd the greatest part, some few escaping into the Houses of the Ambassadors of the several Nations, to whom they belonged, where, by the Intercession of the Leading Men of the Conspiracy, they found a Sanctuary against the most barbarous Fury of the enrag'd Multitude.

## C H A P. II.

*Containing the History of the Reign of Basili Zuski, and the second Counterfeit Demetrius, till the Election of Uladislaus, Son of Sigismund, King of Poland.*

**T**HE next following night, having put an end to the Massacre and Tumult, the Boyars and other Lords of the Empire met two days after, to concert measures about the Election of a new Emperour. The deference they all paid to *Zuski*, as the Contriver and Chief Leader of the whole Enterprize, made them, after he had received the Thanks of the whole Assembly, first address themselves to him, and desire his Opinion in the present Emergency of the State.

*Basili-Zuski*, who beforehand had sufficient Opportunity to sound their Inclinations, knowing that the major Part were at his Devotion, and not questioning but that, the rest, in acknowledgment of his late Service, would also, without much difficulty, be brought over to his Party, took this Opportunity to tell them; That he was over-joyed to see the same Satisfaction in their Faces, which they had testified by their Words, in reference to the late Enterprize, contrived and executed by his directions; That, as the Greatness of the *Russian* Empire was chiefly owing to the extraordinary Feats of that renowned Emperour, *John Basilovits*, so the present ill posture of their Affairs must be attributed to the Perfidiousness, Murders, and Usurpation of *Boris Gondenov*: That, to deliver them from this Usurper, and to revenge upon him the

the Death of the two Sons of *John Basilovits*, he had been prevail'd upon to acknowledge the last Great Duke for the true *Demetrius*, and rightful Heir of the Crown. But this Impostor, having trampled both upon their Laws and Religion, he had twice ventur'd his Life to rescue them from his unsupportable Tyranny; and since now God Almighty had blest'd their projected Design with Succels, by the assistance of their Zeal and Courage for the common Cause, whereby the Royal Line being extinguished, they were now in the quality of a Free People, unto whom was devolved the whole Right of Election, it was their Duty not to let slip so favourable an opportunity of re-establishing their Affairs, according to the true antient Constitution of that Great Monarchy, which they ought to look upon as the only solid Foundation, wheretupon to build so vast a Structure. That, as for his part, he was very ready to assist them with his Counsel, and such Observations as he had opportunity to make during the space of thirty or forty Years, in the most considerable Employments in the Kingdom; being sensible that their future Felicity would depend from the Choice they were now going to make of a Person fit to fill the Throne of this vast Empire. That (if they would follow his Advice) a Person of mean Extraction would by no means be qualified to answer their Expectation, and to command so many Persons of an eminent Rank, who would not without Reluctancy submit to his Commands, or at least claim a Prerogative to controul his Orders, and to have a share in the Administration of the Government. That a young Prince would be insufficient to undergo the Burthen, at the present juncture of Time, that it was to be fear'd he would be more mindful of his Pleasures, than the Troubles and Fatigues of so great a Charge, and by neglecting his Duty, and laying the Weight thereof upon other Men's Shoulders, make their present Condition worse, instead of mending it. That therefore they had no other way left



left them at this time, than to cast their Eyes upon a Person in the Commonwealth, fitly qualified for the Management of so great an Empire, at the worst of Times. That, to answer this End, they ought to chuse One advanced in Years, of an Illustrious Birth, and well vers'd, by many Years Experience in the Management of publick Affairs; one of approved Valour and Conduct, measuring his Interest by that of the State, and constantly adhering to their Religion and most ancient Customs; From such a one it is (concluded he) that we may with Reason expect a Redress of those Mischiefs which have in the late Reigns overwhelmed this Empire, and see it restored to its former flourishing Condition.

There were very few in the Assembly, who did not perceive that *Basili-Zuski*, in the Description he had given of his Prince to fill the Throne of *Muscovy* had pointed directly at himself; They knew him to be descended of one of the most illustrious Families in the whole Empire, and by his long and many Services, both in Peace and War, trained up in the Management of the State, so that meeting, in his Person, with all the necessary Qualifications for so great a Trust, after some days Debate, by the Suffrages of the Nobility, he was elected and proclaimed Emperour of *Russia*, in the Month of *June*, in the Year 1606, about a Month after the Massacre of *Demetrius*.

*Basili-Zuski*  
made  
Emperour.

*Basili-Zuski*, being thus placed in the Throne, was soon after Crowned with the usual Solemnities: The first thing he did, was to send *Marina*, with all her Moveables she brought along with her out of *Poland* (except the Crown Jewels) to her Father's Palace, where he placed a strong Guard, under pretence of preserving them from the Outrages of the Common People, but in effect to observe their Motions, and to secure them as his Prisoners, till he saw how the Treatment the *Poles* had met with in *Musco* would be relish'd at the Court of *Sigismund*. And the better to palliate the late Massacre, he published his Declaration, styling *Demetrius* an  
Impos-

Impostor, Heretick, and Tyrant, and that the most imminent Danger, unto which both Church and State were reduced, under his short but unfortunate Reign, had forced him against his Inclinations to embark in a Design to deliver his Native Country from Death and Confusion, which, tho' somewhat cruel in the Execution, yet by its absolute Necessity, Justice of the Cause, and happy Event, was sufficiently justifiable to all the World.

This Sugar-plumb, tho' it was greedily swallowed by the giddy-headed Multitude, who being always in Extreame, and fond of Novelties, shewed their Approbation by digging up the dead Carcass of *Demetrius*, which with most horrible Imprecations, (in which the *Muscovites* excell most other Nations) they burnt and threw the Ashes into the Air, yet did it not relish so well with the *Poles*, but that, notwithstanding all his specious Pretences, they resolved to call him to a severe Account for the Barbarities committed upon their Country-men.

Neither was it long before they met with an Opportunity to revenge themselves, and to give very sensible Proofs of their utmost Resentments against *Zuski*, the Contriver and chief Actor of that Tragedy. For, tho' the dead Body of the late *Demetrius* was exposed to publick View for several days, it was so mangl'd and hack'd by the Fury of the Multitude, that it was impossible to be known even by the nearest of his Friends. Which *Schacopski*, the Lord Chancellor of *Demetrius*, and one of his most trusty Friends having got notice of, he made his Escape with two or three more whom he knew to be absolutely in his Interest, to the City of *Putnikoff*, which had always stood vigorous for *Demetrius*, from the first time he entred *Muscovy* with an Army. As they were travelling upon the Road at some distance from the City of *Musco*, they made it their Business to spread it about the Country, that *Demetrius* was not dead, that the People during the Tumult had apprehended and massacred another in his place, he having at the very beginning

E

ning

## The Antient and Present State

ning of the Disorder saved himself by Flight. They shewed to several Inn-keepers, the Great Seal of *Muscovy*, telling them at their Departure, that in a little time they should know what a great Guest they had entertain'd that Night. They were also very profuse of their Gold, all which serving for a Confirmation of what they had heard them say before, they took it as an undoubted Truth; and the more they were enjoin'd Secrecie, the more eager were they in Whispering it about among their Friends, so that in a little time it became currant News in the City of *Musco*, where it having been encouraged and improved by some secret Friends of *Demetrius*, there was scarce a Meeting where this surprizing News was not the chief Subject of their Discourse, every one judging of the Matter according to his own Sentiment.

In the mean while, *George Schacopski* was, with his Friends, arriv'd at *Puttswoll*, from whence having immediately dispatch'd a Messenger into *Poland*, with Letters to the Weywode of *Sandomiria's* Lady, wherein he gave her a full Relation of the Conspiracy form'd by *Zuski* and his Party against her Son-in-Law, but that by a peculiar Providence he had saved himself in time by Flight, and was retir'd to a Place of Security, from whence he would suddenly return at the Head of a considerable Army to revenge the Death of his Friends upon these Traitors. That her Husband also had by his Valour escaped the Fury of the enraged Multitude, and remained in good Health in the City of *Musco*; and that in a little time he hoped to give her a more ample Account of the further Success of their Affairs.

Having sent away the Messenger with these Dispatches, he immediately demanded Audience, in the Great Duke, *Demetrius*, his Master's Name, which being soon granted, he appear'd in the Assembly the next day, where having highly extoll'd the Zeal of the Citizens of *Puttswoll*, in having been the first that espoused the Interest of *Demetrius*

*trins*, in the very Infancy of his Affairs, and their Constancy in persevering ever since stedfast in their Loyalty to their Natural Prince; he told them how *Zuski*, the present Usurper, prompted by his immensurable Ambition of putting the Crown upon his own Head, had with his party form'd a Conspiracy against the Life of the Grand Duke *Demetrius*; that, to facilitate their Hellish Design, they had massacred a great number of innocent Persons in their Beds, against all the Laws of Hospitality, and afterwards intended to have done the same to the Great Duke himself, whom they intended to have surprized in his Palace; but having been stop'd for a little while by the Resistance made by his trusty Servants, he had by a peculiar Providence of God Almighty, got into his Stables, where being furnished with some of his swiftest Horses, he was with a few of his particular Friends escap'd the Fury of the People, and had directed his Course to *Poland*, from whence he soon hoped to return with so considerable a Force as to be able to reduce his rebellious Subjects to Obedience. He told them that he had recommended to his Care the Affairs of the whole Empire in his Absence; for the Confirmation of which, he produced the Great Seal of *Muscovy*; and that he had given him a most particular Charge to satisfy his faithful Citizens of *Puttiwoll*, that he was alive and in a place of Security. He further added, that having had such constant and evident Proofs of their Loyalty, he had, in Obedience to his Master's Commands, taken the direct Road to this City, to discharge himself of his Commission, and to give them fresh Assurances of the Grand Duke's Favour which they had at this time the best Opportunity in the World to improve to their Advantage, if, as they had done heretofore, they would by their Stedfastness shew a good Example to the other neighbouring Cities, and acquire to themselves and their Posterity the Glory of an unshaken Loyalty to their natural Prince.



The Citizens of *Puttimoll*, being by these specious Pretences soon inveigled into a Belief of his sincere Intentions, and taking Compassion on the Misfortune of a Prince, whose Interest they had always espoused from the time of his first coming out of *Poland* into *Muscovy*, they, after having return'd their most hearty Thanks for the Honour he did them in putting so great a Value upon their Services, declared unanimously that they were ready to sacrifice their Lives and what else was dear to them in this World, for the Interest of their lawful Prince, and that as a Token of their Fidelity, they were ready to obey his (the Lord Chancellour's) Orders, till the Great Duke himself should be pleased to honour them with his Presence.

A second  
messenger  
thus.

The Chancellour's Project having thus far succeeded according to Wish, he dispatch'd some Messengers to the *Tartars*, unto whom he represented the Cruelty and Treachery of *Zuski*, and by what good Fortune the Great Duke had escaped his Hands, commanding them in his Name to repair at their Rendezvous, which he had appointed near *Puttimoll*. The *Cosacks* being also inveigled by the same Artifices of *Schacopski*, as they had always adhered to the Interest of *Demetrius*, so they were now the most forward in appearing in Arms for the maintaining of his pretended Right; so that the Lord Chancellour, seeing himself thus strengthened by a considerable Party of *Cosacks*, *Tartars*, and some *Muscovites*, and by the Surrender of several other Places in the Neighbourhood of *Puttimoll*, he obliged them to swear true Allegiance to *Demetrius*, with a solemn Promise not to lay down their Arms, till they had been reveng'd of that bloody Usurper *Basili-Zuski*, and restored *Demetrius* to the Throne of *Muscovy*.

*Zuski* was  
told by the  
Demetrius.

It is ealie to be imagined that the new Emperor was not a little Alarm'd at so unexpected and unwelcome a piece of News; but believing it most for his purpose to quench the Fire in the Ashes, before

before it should break out into a Flame, he marched with what Troops he could get together in haste towards the Enemy. But these being in the mean while reinforced by a considerable Body, under the Command of a certain *Muscovian* Lord, whose name was *Isthoma*, they Charged *Zuski*, who was at the Head of his Troops, with so much Fury, that they put him entirely to the rout, and remaining thus Masters of the Field, pursued him so closely, that with much ado he escaped to the City of *Musco*, where he was block'd up by the Enemy, who fortified their Camp within a Mile of the City.

The *Poles* in the mean while had not been idle, but having received Intelligence, that a considerable Party in *Muscovy*, had declared for *Demetrius*, they were over-joy'd to have found so favourable an Opportunity to revenge upon the *Muscovites*, the Death of their Countrymen, Massacred in their Quarters, against the Laws of Nations; for which purpose, they maintain'd a Correspondency with *Schacopski*, whom they inform'd that they had found out a certain Gentleman in *Poland*, not unlike in this Person to *Demetrius*, who intended to appear at the Head of a considerable Army in *Muscovy*. In the mean while they had got together a Body of twelve thousand *Cossacks*, under the Command of one *John Polutnich*, who being sent by this new *Demetrius* to reinforce the Army, that lay Encamped near the Gates of the City of *Musco*, was by his special Commission constituted General over all his Forces.

This *Polutnich* was a *Muscovite* by Birth, and now a Soldier of Fortune; he had been bred among the *Tatars*, and serv'd his Apprenticeship in Arms among the *Cossacks*, where he had made himself famous for his extraordinary Atchievements, till at last he was taken by the *Turks*, and made a Gally Slave; but by good Fortune rescued by the *Venetians*; from thence he took his way through *Poland*, where having met with this new *Demetrius*, he obtained of him the Command over his whole Army: *Pol-*

*Polutnich*, therefore having, pursuant to his Commission, join'd the Forces before *Musco*, shew'd his Orders to *Isthoma*, who was forced to obey, but being extreemly disgusted at the Affront put upon him, to see himself thus neglected, and another to reap the fruits of his Victory; he, with ten thousand Men, whom he had debauch'd before, and brought over to his Party, went over to *Zuski*, who receiv'd him no less than his Tutelar Angel, to whom he was indebted for his present Deliverance; especially when he assured both him and the People, that there was no such Man as *Demetrius* at *Puttiwoll*; and that the whole was only a Contrivance of *Schacopski*, who by these Intrigues intended to make himself the more Considerable.

The whole City being not a little over-joy'd at these comfortable Tydings, the People as well as the Nobility, sent their Deputies into the Camp to *Polutnich*. The first desired, that they might be admitted into the Presence of *Demetrius* their Prince, and that they were ready to prostrate themselves at his Feet, and to beg pardon for their past Offences. Those of the Nobility represented to the General, how miserably he was imposed upon by the Artifices of *Schacopski*; that the true *Demetrius*, whose Interest he had espoused was in the presence of a great many Thousands slain in the City of *Musco*; and therefore, whoever since had assumed his Name, and counterfeited his Person, must needs be an Impostor, from whom he could expect neither Honour nor Profit; That therefore, he would be much better advised to leave his Party, and to spare the Effusion of Christian Blood, by acknowledging *Zuski* for the lawful Sovereign of *Muscovy*, who would not fail to heap upon him such Honours and Dignities, as should be suitable to his Merits.

*Polutnich* answer'd like a Man of Honour, that he was sorry to understand that they took him to be like *Isthoma*, a Traytor both to his Master and Country; That they did him wrong in entertain-

ing so mean an Opinion of him; That, tho' he was a Soldier of Fortune, he would never give *Demetrius* the least Occasion of repenting himself of the Trust he had put in him. That the Prince was certainly in *Poland*, where he had seen and spoke with him, and had from his own hands received this Commission of being General of this Army. That if they were so nearly touch'd, as they pretended, in their Consciences, with the Effusion of Humane Blood, the best way to prevent it would be, to return to their true Allegiance, and pay to their lawful Prince due Obedience, and as a Pledge of their future Fidelity, and of their remorse for what was past, to deliver up into his Hands the Usurper of his Crown. That this was the only means left them to prevent these Evils, which they dreaded, and by which they might hope to deserve their Pardon, and to secure themselves, their Wives and Children, and the whole City from destruction.

The Inhabitants of *Musco*, being in no wise satisfied with *Polutnich's* Answer, which served them for a Confirmation of what they had received from *Isthoma* before, to wit; That there was no such Man as *Demetrius*, either in the Camp, or any where else; and encourag'd by the late Defection of *Isthoma*; they resolved unanimously to stand by *Zuski*, and not to hearken to any further Impositions, but to treat *Polutnich* as an Enemy of their Country. Pursuant to this Resolution, most of the young Men inhabiting the City of *Musco*, were put in Arms, and being join'd with such regulated Troops as were brought over by *Isthoma*, they made a furious Sally with a hundred and twenty thousand Men; and, attacking the *Demetrian* General on all sides in his Entrenchments, forced him to retreat to *Catnga*. *Zuski*, after a few days spent in modelling his Army, march'd thither in Person, and closely besieg'd *Schacopski*, who so bravely defended himself against the *Muscovites*, that he forced them to abandon the Enterprize, and march



## The Antient and Present State

back to *Musco*, with the loss of some Thousands of their best Men.

Some time was bestow'd in raising the necessary Recruits, so that *Polutnich*, in the mean while, having recovered Breath, saw himself once more in a Condition to appear with a considerable Body in the Field, which having afresh Alarm'd the Great Duke, he marched once more against them, with a very formidable Army.

The *Demetrians*, tho' much inferior in Number, being as forward as they to come to Blows, both Armies were drawn up in order of Battle, in a great Plain, not many Miles from the City of *Thula*, and were just upon the point of Engaging one another, when a Body of five thousand *Muscovites*, which were posted in the Front of the left Wing of the *Demetrian* Army, instead of attacking the Enemy, ran over to them, all in a Body, which having put *Polutnich*, and the whole Army into a great Consternation, it was thought most advisable to avoid fighting, and to retreat to *Thula*.

*Zuski* falling in their Rear, cut off a considerable number of them, closely pursuing the rest to the Walls of the City, which was immediately after, surrounded by the whole Army, and attacked with all the Fury imaginable; The besieged having in their Retreat, been forced to leave behind them all their Artillery and Ammunition, were very ill provided with such Things as were necessary to sustain a Siege; nevertheless, trusting in their Courage, they defended themselves so valiantly, that the *Muscovites* seeing themselves repulsed with great Slaughter in several Attacks, were obliged to enclose the City, by making a strong Line of Circumvallation round about it, in hopes to reduce it by Famine, which succeeded according to their Expectation.

For those within, by their sudden Retreat, having had neither Time or Opportunity to put Provisions in the City, were in a little time, reduced to the greatest Extremity for want of them. *Schacopski*,

*scopski*, in the mean while, was not a little amaz'd, that he received not the least News out of *Poland*, whither he had dispatch'd his Messengers to advertise them of the danger they were in; and the Inhabitants of *Thula*, who saw themselves reduced to that Extremity, as to be forced to feed upon Cats, Dogs, Horses, and such like Things, without hopes of Relief, began to be mutinous, and to accuse both *Schacopski* and *Polutnich*, of having betrayed them by their fictitious Insinuations, as if their Great Duke, *Demetrius*, were alive in *Poland*, which if he had been, he would not have fail'd to give them his Assistance in this Extremity. *Schacopski* put the best Countenance he could upon the Matter, telling them, that they could not expect him to come in Person, unless back'd with a Force suitable to the Strength of his Enemies; and, that, if they would but have Patience, he did not question, but in a few days to hear of his approach, in order to come to their Relief. *Polutnich* assur'd them upon his Honour, that he himself had seen and spoke with a certain Person, of about thirty Years of Age, who was in *Poland*, acknowledg'd to be the true *Demetrius*, and from whose Hands he had received his Commission; that they should not rely upon his Word alone, but that he would advise them to send a trusty Messenger of their own (one, whom they knew to have seen the Prince *Demetrius* before) into *Poland*, to represent to him the true State of their Affairs, and to solicit prompt Succors; that at his Return, he would be ready to join with them in any thing they should think most advisable for their common Safety.

The Citizens of *Thula*, having given their Consent to this Proposal, and dispatch'd a certain Messenger, who by favour of the Night, and the Carelessness of the Besiegers got safely thro' their Camp without being discovered, they gave fresh Assurance of their Stedfastness to *Polutnich*, till the return of this Emisary. *Schacopski*, in the mean while, was not a little surpris'd, that he could not  
hear

Quia me  
vestigia  
terrent.

Another  
Demetri-  
us set up by  
the Poles.

hear the least Tidings out of *Poland*; but the true Cause was, that the Gentleman, whom the *Poles* had engag'd to personate the true *Demetrius*, having understood, in what ill a posture his Affairs were in *Muscovy*, after the two last Defeats, began to retract his Promise of making himself an Instrument to satisfy the Revenge of the *Poles* upon the *Muscovites*; and setting before his Eyes the fatal End of the late *Demetrius*, after he was in Possession of the Empire, he look'd upon the *Muscovian* Throne, like the Fox upon the Lion's Den, and therefore wisely resolv'd rather to enjoy himself upon his plentiful Estate in *Poland*, than to expose himself to danger for the imaginary Lustre of a Crown.

But the *Poles*, being fully resolv'd not to acquit *Zuski* thus of the Barbarities committed against their Countrymen, were not long before they found out another to supply his Place; *Muscovy*, so fertile of Impostors, soon furnishing them with One, whom they look'd upon as a fit Tool to promote their obstinate Revenge against *Zuski*; this was one *Ivan*, or *John*, a Native of *Pocala*, a City of *Russia*, where he had been a School-Master for some time; and being grown weary of his Employment, took hold of this Opportunity to meliorate his Condition, and if possible, to change his School Scepter for that of the *Muscovian* Empire.

The first who publickly espous'd his Interest, was one *Micharetski*, a Man of very eminent Quality in *Poland*, who having gathered a considerable Body of Troops, they march'd at the Head of them to *Puttiwoll*, where, having been received with the greatest demonstrations of Joy and Respect due to their Sovereign, they directed their March to the City of *Staradub*, where, being reinforced by some *Muscovites*, that upon the Rumor spread abroad of the arrival of their Prince *Demetrius*, flock'd in to them from all Parts; it was resolv'd to march with all possible speed to the Relief of *Thula*.

Whilst



*The second counterfeit Demetrius*



Whilft

Whilst they were concerting Measures to put their intended Design in execution, the Messenger from the Citizens of *Thula*, who, for fear of being intercepted by the Enemies Parties, that were abroad in great Numbers, had been obliged to travel a great way about, before he arrived at *Staradub*, was introduced into the presence of this new modell'd *Demetrius*, who, tho' having some resemblance to the other *Demetrius*, yet was so far different from him, whom this Messenger had seen frequently before, that he was not a little startled at the sight of it, being scarce able to deliver his Message without confusion. *Demetrius*, by the dissatisfaction he observed in his Countenance, so on guessing at the true Cause of it, judg'd it not advisable to send back his Resolution of marching to the Relief of the Town by this Messenger, who, he fear'd, might by this Discovery, raise a great Prejudice in the Place against his Person and Interest; wherefore, having ordered him to be secur'd under a good Guard upon some Pretence or other, he resolv'd to detain him, till he in Person, could march to raise the Siege of the Place.

This precaution, tho' in it self founded upon very weighty Reasons, yet proved the occasion of the loss of *Thula*. For both the Garrison and Inhabitants of that City not receiving the least Intelligence concerning their Messenger, whom they had dispatch'd into *Poland*, they concluded that he must have fallen into the Hands of the Enemies, and being reduc'd to the utmost Extremity for want of Provisions, it was resolv'd, with Joint-consent, rather to accept of the advantageous Conditions offer'd to them by *Zuski*, than to perish by Famine; pursuant to which Resolution, the Place surrendred it self upon very honourable Terms; which were however, but very ill observ'd by *Zuski*, who, contrary to his Oath, caus'd several of the Chief Officers of the Garrison to be hang'd, and the Brave *Poturnich*, and the Cunning *Schacopski*, to be cast into a loathsome Prison, where they both were miserably famish'd to death. The

*Thula surrendred to Zuski.*

The *Cossacks* that had hitherto stood firm to the Interest of *Demetrius*, having had no Intelligence of his Approach, consequently looking upon his Cause as desperate, embraced the Party of *Zuski*, who being overjoyed at the Conquest of *Thula* and the Accession of so considerable a Force, ordered his Army in Conjunction with these *Cossacks*, to form the Siege of *Caluga*, the strongest Place as yet in the Possession of the *Demetrians*. The Army was scarce sat down before the Place, when a Rumour being spread among the *Cossacks* that *Demetrius* at the Head of an Army was arrived at *Staradub*, they began to mutiny first, and having drawn some of the *Muscovites* into their Party, the whole Army, upon the News spread industriously by the *Cossacks*, that *Demetrius* was advancing to fight them, was possessed with so panick a Fear, that without the least Order, they at Midnight left their Tents, Cannon and Baggage, every one making the best of his Way to the City of *Musco* where they brought the first News to *Zuski* of their imaginary Defeat, and the Flight of his Army without being pursued by any body.

*Zuski's  
Army dis-  
persed.*

The *Cossacks* and their Party being thus left absolute Masters of the whole Camp, at the first Break of Day did not fail to give notice of what had happened, to the Inhabitants of *Caluga*, and that *Demetrius* was arrived at *Staradub*; but these looking upon it as a Stratagem, and a Contrivance of the *Cossacks* to catch them in a Trap, at first answered them with Fire and Ball, till upon their reiterated Assurances that the *Muscovites* were fled, and their offering Hostages as Pledges of what they had related to them to be Truth, they sent out some of the Officers of the Garrison into the Camp, who at their Return having confirm'd what they had been assur'd of before by the *Cossacks*, they soon open'd their Gates, and having shar'd the Booty found in the Camp with them, they entred triumphantly into the City.

After

After they had bestow'd a few days in rejoicing and refreshing themselves, the *Cossacks*, with part of the Garrison, to the Number of Ten thousand, marched from thence to the Camp of *Demetrius*, near *Staradub*, where having rejoiced him with the unexpected News of the Relief of *Caluga*, they were received with great Demonstrations of his Royal Favour, and vast Promises of ample Rewards after his Recovery of the Throne.

Thus, whilst *Zuski* was repenting himself of his fatal Error of having receiv'd into his Army so considerable a Number of his Enemies Troops, *Demetrius* encreased in Strength every day; The Reputation of what had happen'd before *Caluga*, and his being join'd by the *Cossacks*, made such lively Impressions upon the Minds of the *Muscovites*, that many of them were for siding with the most fortunate; and the *Poles* and *Lithuanians*, bordering upon *Muscovy*, being enticed by the Hopes of Reward and Booty, flock'd in great Numbers to his Camp; so that seeing himself in a Capacity to encounter his Enemies, he march'd in quest of them, and having found *Misnowski* the *Muscovian* General advantageously posted at a strong Pass, he nevertheless attack'd him so furiously that he entirely routed them, killing near Ten thousand upon the Spot, besides a great number of Prisoners, among whom was their General *Matthew Misnowski* himself.

The *Zim-  
kians* rou-  
ted.

This Victory gained such a Reputation to *Demetrius*, that the whole Province of *Severia*, with some other adjacent Places, readily submitted to his Obedience, acknowledging him for their true and undoubted Sovereign, and promising to furnish his Army with all manner of Necessaries. But the *Poles* being more especially encourag'd by this Success to pursue their Revenge to the Destruction of *Zuski*, sent considerable Supplies to back the Pretensions of *Demetrius*. Duke *Roman Rosinski* sent a good Body of chosen Horse under the Command of his Friend *Walareski*, *Adam Wisniewski*, *Charlinski*, *Mieliski*, and several other Lords of the first Quali-



## The Antient and Present State

Quality in *Poland*, soon after joined him with such Troops as they had raised in their respective Countries; besides that, a new Body of 8000 *Cossacks*, upon the first News of his Victory, had declared for him, and taken service among his Troops.

Not long after Duke *Rosinski*, being also arrived in the Camp, was by the Consent of the *Polish* Lords and other Principal Officers, declared General of the whole Army.

*Basili-Zuski* had in the mean while applied all his Care in getting ready his Recruits and making new Levies throughout the whole Empire, with an Intention to bring so formidable an Army into the Field, as to be able to stop the further Progress of his Enemy. For this end having formed an Army of above a Hundred and fifty thousand Men, and declared his Brother *Demetrius Zuski* General, he ordered him to march directly towards the *Poles*, and fight them wherever he met them. Pursuant to these Orders, the *Zuskian* Army march'd towards the City of *Bolchow*, where having fix'd their Tents within sight of the Enemy, some Days were spent in Skirmishes, whilst the Generals of both Parties watch'd their Opportunity of Deciding their Quarrel by a Battel to the best Advantage; It was not long before they found it, being equally eager of Engaging.

For, as I said before, scarce had they lain thus encamp'd a few days, but they saw the *Zuskians* early in the Morning drawing out to put themselves in Battle Array, having detach'd a Body of their best Horse to possess themselves of some advantageous Posts near to the *Demetrian* Camp; which these have soon been advertised of by their Parties that were abroad to observe the Motion of the Enemy, they with all speed sent also a Body of their best Horse to engage the *Muscovites*, and to maintain those advanced Posts, till they could be sustained by some of their Infantry. The *Polish* Horse engaged the *Muscovites* with so much Bravery, that after an Engagement of an Hour they forced them to quit  
those

those Posts, whilst the whole Army was putting in Order of Battle, having taken the Advantage of the same Ground which the *Muscovites* intended to have made use of against them.

The *Muscovites* being baffled in their first Enterprize, however did not lose Courage, as trusting to their Number, and *Demetrius Zuski* their General, at the Head of them, left nothing unattempted which might encourage his Soldiers to fight bravely against the sworn Enemies of their Country; He told them, That a great part of the *Demetrian Army* was composed out of Vagabonds and Rebels, whom they had seen fly before them so often of late, and who now puffed up with their late Success near Caluga, more to be attributed to their Treachery and a Lucky Chance than their bravery, had once more the Impudence to look them in the Face, hurried on by their ill Destiny, to receive the Reward of their Treacheries from their Hands; That the rest were Poles, the Hereditary Enemies of their Country and Religion, unto whom must be ascribed all the Evils and Mischiefs which had befallen their Empire for these several Years last past; That this insolent Nation, not being contented to have once before involved their Country in Blood and Confusion by setting up an Impostor instead of the true *Demetrius* slain at Ugletz, were now upon the point of imposing upon them a Second, in order to dispose of the Throne of Muscovy at their Pleasure, to enslave their Country, and to root out the true ancient Greek Religion. He represented to them, how inglorious, nay, ignominious it would be to the whole *Russian* Nation, who had extended their Conquests over most of the neighbouring Countries, to receive Laws from the Poles, who had conspired their Ruin and Destruction. That therefore they being to expect nothing but Misery from their mortal Enemies, they must look for their Deliverance in their own Courage, with a Resolution not to out-live that Day, which, if lost, would put an End to all the Glory purchased by their Ancestors,

to

to their own Felicity, and that of all their Posterity.

*Rosinski* on the other hand, the *Demetrian* General, was not wanting to enflame the Courage of his Soldiers, by representing to them: That the *Muscovites* which they saw before them, were the Remnants of those whom they had so often beaten with a much less number; witness their late Engagement with *Misinowski*, whom, to their eternal Glory, they had droven from his advantageous Post, notwithstanding the inequality of their number. That therefore they should not be startled at their Enemies, who, tho' much more numerous, were, for the most part, an undisciplin'd Rabble, terrible only in outward Appearance, the rest, who so lately had experience of their invincible Courage, scarce daring to look their Conquerours in the face. He desired them to remember the Slaughter of their Countrymen in cold Blood, against all the Laws of Hospitality, by that very same Rabble, whom they were now going to Engage; that their Blood crying for Vengeance, they had now the fairest Opportunity in the World, to take the most ample Satisfaction from those barbarous Wretches, and to punish them for their Cruelties. He concluded, That they ought to consider, that the Conquest of whole *Muscovy*, depended upon the points of their Swords, and that one day's labour would put them into Possession of a vast Empire, and all the Riches and Treasure of their Enemies, be the Reward of the Victory.

*Rosinski* finding a great eagerness in his Soldiers to Engage, led them on straight to the Enemy, whom they attack'd with an unparallell'd Bravery, and forced them several times to shrink before the daring *Poles*; but being continually reinforced with fresh Supplies, they maintain'd their Ground in spite of the Bravery of the *Demetrian*, so that the Success of the Battle remain'd doubtful for a great part of the Day. But it is to be

observed, that the *Cossacks* (in the same manner as *Zaporius* did some years before, when he fought *Hodwen* the *Borissian* General) had placed all their Boys, and other Attendants belonging to the Baggage, with some Soldiers, enough to make up a Front, at some distance behind the Line of Battle; these upon a Signal, agreed betwixt them, advanc'd during the heat of the Battle, with their Colours flying, Drums beating, and Trumpets sounding; which the *Muscovites*, who were already scarce able to sustain the Fury of the *Poles*, having perceived, and believing it to be a Body of Reserve, coming to attack them afresh, they began to give Ground; which the *Polish* Horse being sensible of, they renew'd the Charge with so much Bravery, that in less than an Hours time, they forced the *Muscovian* Cavalry to quit the Field in great disorder. The Infantry being thus exposed, both in Front and Flank, were soon put to an entire Rout, with a great Slaughter, being bereav'd of their Horse to cover their Retreat; so, that out of this vast Army, there were not five hundred left that quitted the Field in a Body; except five thousand, who saved themselves in the City of *Belchom*, but were in a few days after forced to surrender at discretion to *Demetrius*, who falling into the same Error as *Zuski* did before with the *Cossacks*, took them into Pay, and received the same Reward from their hands, as we shall see anon.

*Demetrius* being by so signal a Victory, become Master of the Field, and the whole Camp, Cannon and Baggage of the Enemy, what wonder, if all the adjacent Places followed the Fortune of the Conquerour, unto whom they opened their Gates, without the least Opposition; unless it were *Moskwa*, and two or three more, who had Courage enough to make some shew of Resistance, but at the approach of the Victorious Army, surrendered also at Discretion.

*Zuski's*  
Army en-  
tirely rous-  
ed.



## The Antient and Present State

Having thus opened his way to the Capital City of *Musco*, he directed his March thither, not questioning but that the Terror of his last Victory, would have so strong an influence over the disheartned Citizens, as to make them open their Gates at his first arrival before the City. It is no difficult thing to imagine, that the Loss of so vast an Army, on which seem'd to depend the Fate of the whole Empire, must needs put that City, upon the approach of the Conquerour, into such a Consternation, as is not easie to be express'd. But besides the presence of their Great Duke *Basili Zuski*, who in this extreimity of his Affairs, was not wanting by all means possible to inspire Courage into his dejected Subjects; there were two things, which contributed not a little to the Resolution of the Citizens, to adhere to *Zuski* to the last Extreimity. The first was, That *Demetrius*, in-lieu of Marching directly to the City of *Musco*, trifled away his Time in the more Northern Provinces, where the *Poles* rambling up and down the Country, were often intercepted by the *Muscovites*, who in the mean while, had leisure given them, to recover themselves out of their first Fright, and to take such measures as were most suitable to the present Condition of their Affairs. The second was the Perfidioufness of these five thousand *Muscovites*, who, after their Surrender at *Bolchow*, had taken Service under *Demetrius*, and, now having watch'd their Opportunity, left him again, and went over to *Zuski*, unto whom they gave an Account of the whole Condition of the Army, assuring him, that the *Poles* were not near so formidable nor numerous, as represented to them by Fame; and that it would be no difficult matter for the City to defend it self against them, till being reinforced with fresh Supplies out of the more remote Provinces of the Kingdom, they might meet with a more favourable Opportunity to remove them from their Walls.

This relation, and the delays of *Demetrius*, having put new Courage into the frighted Citizens, it was resolved, with what Forces they could assemble in haste, to post themselves in a very advantageous Place, on the borders of the Province of *Severia*, thereby to cut off all Communication betwixt the *Poles* and the Southern Provinces of *Muscovy*, bordering on *Lithuania*, from whence they must be supplied with Men, and all other Necessaries for the carrying on of the War.

The *Poles* were not a little startled at this vigorous Resolution of the *Muscovites*, whom they believed to have been lost past all recovery; but having no other way left them to secure their Retreat, and to keep open the communication with their own Country, than their Swords, they resolved to make an Amends for their ill Conduct, by their Bravery. Having therefore drawn back their Army from the more Northern Parts, to the South side of the City of *Musco*, they march'd to the Frontiers of *Severia*, where having with a most gallant Resolution either to vanquish or to die, attack'd those Forces in their advantageous Post, they put them to the rout, and thus having opened their Passage, they pitch'd their Tents near the City of *Tusin*, betwixt the two Rivers, *Tusin* and *Maska*, which in a manner surrounded and secur'd their Camp.

Being now become more and more sensible of their Error, in having neglected to make themselves Masters before of so advantageous a Post, which in all likelihood would have prov'd fatal to that City during the first Consternation, they by frequent Excursions endeavoured to repair their first Fault; by which they so enclosed the Citizens within their Walls, that scarce a Man durst appear at any distance from the Town. The Inhabitants seeing themselves thus reduced to great Scarcity, as being very near quite shut up by the frequent Excursions of the *Poles*, and seeing themselves in no Capacity at present to drive them from their ad-

*Musco*  
block'd up  
by *Demetrius*.

vantageous Post, it was resolved to try, whether by certain Proposals of Peace, they might not disunite the *Poles* in the Camp of *Demetrius*.

They had ever since the last Massacre of the *Poles*, detained the *Polish* Ambassadors, and the Weywode of *Sandomiria*, with his Daughter, the Great Dutchess *Marina*, Prisoners; and as they did not question that they were very desirous of their Liberty, so, they believ'd they might make use of them as fit Instruments to encompass their Design. It was not the Reconciliation with the *Poles* they aim'd at, but knowing the Nature of the *Poles* to be unstable, they hoped by this Artifice, to gain time, at least till the arrival of those Supplies, which were raising for their Relief in the Northern Provinces, by *Knez Basili Masalski*, a near Kindred man to the Great Duke *Basili Zuski*.

To obtain this end, a Treaty of Peace was proposed to the *Polish* Ambassadors and the Weywode of *Sandomiria*, and that in the mean while, to remove all Obstacles, a Cessation of Arms should be agreed on for a certain Time. The Weywode of *Sandomiria* being very willing to lay hold of this Opportunity, to free himself from his Captivity, sent one of his best Friends into the Camp of *Demetrius*, to make these Proposals, and in case of Refusal, to endeavour to persuade the *Poles* to separate themselves from *Demetrius*, and to cease from committing any Hostilities, which in all likelihood might prove an obstacle to the Conclusion of the Peace, and consequently to his Liberty.

But the *Poles* in the *Demetrian* Camp, not measuring their Interest by that of the Weywode, but by the Success of *Demetrius*, from whence they hoped to reap the fruits of their past Labours, were so far from hearkning to these Propositions, that they would not as much as enter upon the least Commerce of a Treaty, unless it were granted as a Preliminary Article; That *Demetrius* should be immediately restored to the Throne, and the Usurper *Zuski*, to be delivered up into their hands.

The *Muscovites* finding themselves disappointed in their Expectation, had no other Means left to secure themselves, but to repel Force with Force; For which end, having dispatch'd frequent Messengers to *Basili Masalski*, whom we mention'd before, to hasten to their Relief; he, pursuant to the reiterated Orders from Court, march'd with his Army which consisted of near fourscore thousand Men, towards the City of *Musco*, where, having entrench'd himself upon the Banks of the River *Chodiunka* about a League from the City, he hop'd to meet with a favourable Opportunity to dislodge the *Demetrians*, or at least to annoy them, and hinder their frequent Excursions.

But *Rosinski*, who was not insensible of the Inconveniencies which must needs be occasion'd by the nearness of so great an Army to his Camp, resolv'd to beat up their Quarters with the first Opportunity. For which purpose he drew his Army out of the Lines, unperceiv'd of the Enemy by favour of the Night, and having approach'd the Enemies Camp, over-secure in their Number and nearness to the City, attack'd them in their Entrenchments with such Fury, that in a few hours they kill'd near Twenty thousand upon the Place, the rest escaping to the City, leaving among the Prisoners their General in the Hands of the Enemy.

The *Poles*, who had purchased so signal a Victory with the loss of very few of their Men, had almost dearly paid for it at last. For, having disperled themselves all over the Fields without the least Order or any Guard to secure them, and being thus engaged in the Pillage of the dead Bodies and the Enemies Camp; the *Muscovites* at break of day, having been advertised of the Disorder they were in, rally'd their scattered Troops, and being reinforced with fresh Supplies out of the City, return'd to the Charge, and renewing the Combat, fell every where upon the victorious *Poles* before they had time to put themselves in a Posture of receiving

the Zu-  
king Army  
routed.

ally gain



The Zuskians beaten a second time.

the Enemy, so that there was nothing but Disorder, Confusion and Slaughter to be seen all over the Field, and the *Muscovites* were upon the point of snatching the Victory out of the Hands of their Conquerours, who began to prepare to save themselves by Flight, had it not been for their Generals who coming in timely with a small Body of Horse to their Assistance, both by their Words and Example encouraged them either to vanquish or to die. They appear'd in every place where they found their Presence most necessary, to animate the Soldiers oppress'd by the Number of their Enemies, they told them that being surrounded on all sides, they must put all their Hopes of Relief on the Points of their Swords; they represented to them, how ignominious it would be, to be routed by those they had so lately vanquish'd, and to suffer themselves to be robb'd of the Fruits of their Victory; so, that partly out of Shame, partly out of Despair, they first began to make good their Ground, and then, being animated with Revenge, they fell with such fury upon the *Muscovites*, that at last they forced them to retreat, and thus in one day gained a double Victory over their Enemies.

The Reputation of which, being improved by Fame, not only some of the most remote Provinces of the *Muscovian* Empire, sent their Deputies to make their Submission to *Demetrius*, but he was also daily supplied with fresh Recruits out of *Poland*, besides a Body of 4000 new-raisd Horse, under the Command of *Zlarowski* and *Sapiha*.

The *Muscovites* on the other Hand having scarce left a sufficient Number out of their vast Armies to defend the City of *Musco*, and seeing *Demetrius* encrease in Strength daily, were forced to have recourse to new Counsels; For which Reason they once more addrest themselves to the *Polish* Ambassadors, and the Weywode of *Sandomiria*, who were as yet in their Custody: Unto these they promised Golden Mountains, if by their Interest at the

the *Polish* Court they could prevail with *Sigismund*, King of *Poland*, to recall his Subjects out of the Service of this *Pseudo-Demetrius*.

The Ambassadors and the Weywode gladly accepted their offers, but being very desirous of their Liberty, told them that they did not question if Matters were truly represented to the King, he might in time be induced to draw off his Supplies from *Demetrius*; But that, as his Interest at Court was back'd by some of the Chiefest Men of the Kingdom, and in great Esteem with the King himself, so it was not to be supposed, that they should be able to prevail against their Power, when absent, which perhaps, when present, they might do without much Difficulty, by representing to the Court the true State of the Case, and the Imposture of *Demetrius*. They represented to them, how advantageous it would be to their Affairs, in detecting the whole Intrigue of this supposititious *Demetrius*, if *Marina* in Person appear'd at Court, and by her own Confession confirmed the Death of her Lord, which would put the Imposture of this Pretender beyond all question, and, without doubt, contribute more than all other Endeavours towards the recalling of the *Poles* out of the Service of the Impostor.

The *Muscovites* did not very well relish these Propositions, being unwilling to part with their Prisoners upon so easie Terms; But being at last over-ruled by the Speciousness of their alledged Reasons, and much more by the absolute Necessity of their Affairs, they were at last forced to comply with the Desires of these *Polish* Lords, unto whom, as well as to *Marina*, they granted their Liberty, under Condition, that they should undertake to oblige the King of *Poland* to draw back the Army of his Subjects, which lay encamped under the Walls of the City of *Musco*. They were not sparing in their Promises, so that every thing being agreed on betwixt them, they were in a few days after, permitted to depart under a Guard of five

*Marina*  
and her  
Father set  
at liberty.

hundred Horse, to defend them against the Parties of *Demetrius*, that were continually abroad in great Numbers.

This Treaty had not been managed with so much Secrecy, but that *Demetrius*, who was not without his Spies within the City, had got Scent of it, by whose Means also having got Notice of the Day of their Departure, and judging, not without great Reason, how disadvantageous their Presence at the *Polish* Court might prove to his Affairs; and on the other hand considering, that nothing could contribute more at this time towards the Strengthening of his Party, than if, by joining their Interest with his, he could bring them over to his Side, and engage *Marina* to own him for her Husband; he sent out *Zlarowski* with fifteen hundred Horse to intercept their Passage. *Zlarowski*, having been beforehand informed which way they were to pass, had not marched above two Hours before he met with them, and having ordered five or six hundred of his Horse to face the *Muscovites* who guarded the *Polish* Lords, he in Person, with a few of his Officers, were advancing to address themselves to *Marina* and the Weywode her Father; But the *Zukian* Horse, at the first sight of the *Poles*, whom they saw much stronger than themselves, look'd for their Safety in the Swiftness of their Horses, making the best of their Way towards *Musco*, and leaving the *Poles* committed to their Charge, at the Disposal of their Country-men. *Zlarowski* making his Addreses to *Marina*, complemened her in the Name of *Demetrius*, telling her, that he was sent to invite them to his Camp, being ambitious not to let slip so favourable an Opportunity of delivering them out of the Hands of their Enemies. *Marina* and the Weywode were at some uncertainty what to answer; but seeing themselves in no Capacity of making any Resistance, they return'd *Zlarowski* Thanks for his Care and Vigilancy, and with a seeming Gladness went forward to the *Polish* Camp, where they were presented; immediately after their Arrival, to

Are Inter-  
cepted and  
conducted  
to Deme-  
trius.

Deme-

*Demetrius*: Those of a more refined Judgment look'd upon this proceeding of *Demetrius* as a gross Mistake in Point of Policy, to admit *Marina* and the *Polish* Lords, who were quite unprepared for an Interview of this nature, into his Presence; For *Marina*, as well as her Father and the Ambassadors, being surpris'd at first sight, to see this *Demetrius* differ very much from the Great Duke, slain in the City of *Musco*, betray'd their dissatisfaction sufficiently, both in their Countenances, and the strangeness of their behaviour towards him; which having been observed as well by *Demetrius* himself, as some others that were present at the Interview, he thought it most advisable to send them to another Quarter of the Camp, with Orders not to take notice, that they had been seen by him; hoping thus to hush up the former Passage, till they could concert new Measures to carry on the Intrigue to their mutual Advantage.

But an Error of this Nature being not so soon corrected, the manner of this interview could not be hid from some of the more quick-sighted; and among others had not escaped the particular Observation of *Kniasus Masalski*, a Kinsman both to the routed General of that Name, and to *Zuski* himself, who was ever since the last Defeat detain'd a Prisoner in the Camp.

He having watch'd his opportunity a few days after, made his Escape, and got into the City; where he related to *Zuski* and the *Muscovites*, the Doubts which had at the first Interview with *Demetrius*, appear'd in *Marina's* Countenance and Carriage; all which he represented, with so much Dexterity, and in terms so lively and natural, that the *Muscovites* being fully perswaded of the Imposture, unanimously resolv'd to adhere to *Zuski* to the last Extremity, and rather to endure any thing, than to submit themselves under the Government of an Impostor, imposed upon them by the Contrivances of their mortal Enemies the *Poles*.

*Zuski*



## The Antient and Present State

*Zuski* seeing the People thus confirm'd in his Interest, by the prejudice they had conceived against the Person of his Rival, bethought himself of a certain States-Trick, by which he hoped to render the Fallacy of his Adversary so evident to the *Muscovites*, as that there should be no room left for any further Doubt, to be made upon that score. He deputed some Persons of the first Quality and great esteem among the *Muscovites* to *Ugletz*, to disinter the Body of the Prince *Demetrius*, which had lain there fifteen years, in order to have it conveyed to *Musco*, to be deposited in the Sepulchre of the Grand Dukes of *Muscovy*. Scarce was the Body taken out of the Ground, but it was very industriously spread abroad and insinuated into the *Muscovites* (who without the least difficulty receive an Impression which favours of Superstition) that it had wrought most surprising Miracles, as had been found by the experience of some diseased Persons, who had touch'd it by chance. They had been very careful in having at hand some suborned Lame and Blind, who upon the first touch of it went away upright and clear-sighted; besides a great many other pretended Distempers, otherwise incurable, which were removed in an instant by the miraculous Virtue of this Body. They had also taken particular care to bring a Body, which having not been long under Ground, was as yet uncorrupted; so, that the Veneration of the Superstitious People being heightened, when they found it entire after fifteen Years Burial, it was look'd upon as a Crime deserving no less than Death, to question the Truth of this Fable; for which reason also the People made their Addresses to *Zuski*, desiring that it might remain disinter'd, till a Temple could be built, where it should be revered as a Saint; which at their Importunity was granted them by the Great Duke for that time.

But not long after wisely considering with himself, that such gross Absurdities could not be long hidden from the Eyes of the most quick-sighted, and fearing, lest the Cheat should be discovered,

to his Confusion, and the no small detriment of his Affairs, he caused the Body of this Saint to be suddenly, but very solemnly interr'd among the Tombs of the Great Dukes; to appease the Murmurs of the common People, it was publish'd by *Zuski's* Order; that tho' he did not discommend their Zeal for their Prince, whose Memory ought ever to be sacred among them; nevertheless that, having observed his Subjects to pay the same Veneration to a mortal Creature, which was only due to the immortal Creator, he had taken this Resolution to deposite his Body amongst his Ancestors, rather than to be instrumental in drawing upon himself and his Subjects the Vengeance of God Almighty at this time of imminent Danger, when they stood most in need of his Mercy.

But it is time to return to the Camp, where we have left *Adarina* and her Father to recover themselves of their first Surprize, occasioned by the Interview, we have mentioned before. These having in the mean while had sufficient leisure to consult with some of their intimate Friends, what was best to be done in the present Emergency of their Affairs, whether to accept the Offers of this new modell'd *Demetrius* (who had not been wanting by his Emissaries to insinuate unto them his Pretensions, as far as the Nature of so nice a Thing would admit of) or to reject them with Scorn, and by the Interest of their Friends in the Camp, to endeavour their Return to the Court of *Sigismund*, King of *Poland*. They were not a little divided in their Opinions. Some of them represented to *Marina*, how ignominious it would be for a Person of her Extraction and Dignity, to throw herself away upon an unknown Vagabond, whom she herself knew to be an Impostor, and set up by the *Poles*, for no other End, than to serve their own Turn of revenging themselves upon *Zuski* and the *Muscovites*, which when they had effected, and found themselves strong enough to maintain their Interest in *Muscovy* without him, they would be  
sure

## The Antient and Present State

sure to cast off, and throw him upon the Dunghill, with no less difficulty than they had taken him up. That the *Zuskians* would not fail to improve the whole to her disadvantage, and to alledge against her, that she had married a mean Wretch, and a suborned Property, in hopes to satisfy her own Ambition, and to gratify the Ends of a third Party. On the other hand, it was urged, that there being no great likelihood that the *Poles* should abandon his Interest, more than they had done that of the former, as being founded upon the same bottom, and link'd together by a mutual Interest, the most indissoluble Knot of all humane Affairs, no sufficient Reason could be alledg'd, why she should not as well own this *Demetrius* as the former, being both, equally doubtful, as to their Descent, in relation to the Great Duke, *John Basilovits*; and, that, since she had once had the Misfortune of throwing herself into the Arms of an Impostor, she might, with the same Reason, not refuse the Embraces of a Second, when no less than the Crown of so vast an Empire lay at stake. That, supposing his Birth to be inferior to that of the other *Demetrius*, he was just upon the point of accomplishing his Design; and that the *Muscovites*, reduced to the utmost Extremities, as soon as they were informed of her having owned him for her Husband, would not be long before they would receive him for their Emperour, and place him in the Throne of *Muscovy*. That the Crown would soon wipe off all the Stain of his ignoble Birth, were it never so base and sordid, and exalt him to the same degree with the most illustrious Monarchs of the World. Besides that, if she refused him, she must run a great risque of her Reputation, it being beyond all question, that *Demetrius* and his Friends, to put the better Colour upon their Pretensions, would not fail to publish to the World; That indeed she had formerly been his Wife, but that since, he had Repudiated her, by reason of her Incontinency.

*Marina*

*Marina* having well weigh'd all the Reasons alledged on both sides, as Ambition was the most predominant Passion in her Soul, and that she had once tasted of the Sweets of a Crown, she inclin'd to the Advice of those, who were of Opinion, that, since she had once sat upon the Throne of *Russia*, she ought not to let slip any Means, tho' never so difficult, to recover it. This Consideration being the most prevailing with the Lady, who flatter'd herself with the hopes of better Success in this, than the former Marriage, she resolv'd to set aside all Scruples, to accommode herself to the present ticklish Juncture of time, and not to let slip this Opportunity to re-ascend the Throne of *Muscovy*, which she had lost before, almost as soon as she was in Possession of it. This Resolution having soon been communicated to *Demetrius*; as the whole Business was a Design of a popular Nature, so it was thought most advisable to be transacted in view of the whole Army; the better to blind the World, and to put some Colour upon the delay of this publick Interview, it was given out, That the Great Dutchess *Marina*, had been indisposed for these ten days last past, ever since her arrival in the Camp, and that being now recovered, *Demetrius* was going to conduct her to his Tent.

The whole Army therefore being drawn out into the Field, with all the great Officers in their respective Stations, *Demetrius* accompanied by all the Nobility of both Nations there present, by all the Foreign Ambassadors and Deputies of the revolted Provinces, went on Horseback to meet her in the open Field, where being met, they both, at some Yards distance did alight, he from his Horse, she out of her Coach; Having received one another with open Arms, they intermingled their Kisses with Tears, and with Expressions so tender, so passionate, and so natural, that it was impossible even for the most quick-sighted so much as to suspect an Interview so solemn and passionate, to be artificial; especially when they saw the Lady *Marina*,

*Marina received by Demetrius.*



*rina*, after the first Careſſes were paſt, pay to *Demetrius* the higheſt Reverence and Marks of a moſt profound Eſteem, as ſhe had before given him the moſt paſſionate Teſtimonies of an unfeigned Love, and the moſt ſincere Affection; whiſt *Demetrius* could do nothing elſe than repay theſe Endearments with his repeated Embraces.

After ſome time ſpent in thoſe mutual Careſſes, *Demetrius* made his particular Application to the Weywode of *Sendomiria*, the Father of *Marina*, unto whom he told, That next to the Recovery of his Dear Spouſe out of the Hands of thoſe barbarous Wretches, nothing could be more pleaſing to him at this time, than to ſee himſelf in a Condition to make him in Perſon the Acknowledgments due to him for all the Honours he had received at his Hands. He put him in mind, that, as he had been the firſt who had given real Encouragement to his undertaking, by publickly eſpouſing his Intereſt in *Poland*, ſo he had ever ſince been the conſtant Companion of all his Labours and the various Viciffitudes of Fortune, till that unhappy Separation on the ſixteenth day of *May*, occaſion'd by the Contrivances of their moſt barbarous Enemies. He concluded, that the ſame propitious Fate, which had ſo miraculoſly preſerv'd him from falling into their Hands, and now had once more bleſt him with the ſight of thoſe Perſons he lov'd and reverenc'd moſt in the World, in ſpite of all the malicious Endeavours of their implacable Enemies, ſeem'd already by its auſpicious Influence to have directed his Path, by which to re-aſcend his Throne, to enable him to pay his real Acknowledgments to his Friends, and to put his Enemies to Shame and Confuſion.

The Weywode, after having returned his moſt humble Thanks to *Demetrius* for putting ſo high a Value upon his Services, for which he own'd himſelf ſufficiently rewarded by having honour'd his Family with his Alliance, in marrying his Daughter, and the publick Acknowledgment given juſt  
now

now in the Presence of so many great and brave Men, failed not to insert some remarkable Passages common to them both since their first Attempt of entering *Muscovy* with an Army; and concluded, that he had all the Reason to believe, that the same Power which had been so instrumental in preserving them from so many Dangers, and surmounting all these Difficulties, would crown all their past Labours in a little time with a happy End.

To be short, the Lady play'd so naturally the Innocent, her Father so ingeniously the Politician, and *Demetrius* himself personated so artificially the real Grand Duke, that all three acting their Parts to the Life, drew Tears from the Eyes of the Spectators, the most subtle and quick-sighted being constrained, even against their Inclination, to rest satisfied in such apparent Testimonies of a well-grounded Love and Friendship, as all the rest, however wavering before, were now confirm'd of the Reality of *Demetrius* to be past all Dispute. The whole Ceremony being ended in the Field with all the Dexterity imaginable, they marched in great Pomp, under the Acclamations of the whole Army to *Demetrius* his Tent.

The Rumour of this extraordinary Interview having been soon spread all over the neighbouring Provinces, and from thence throughout the whole Empire; the *Muscovites* came flocking to the Camp from all Parts; and the most remote Provinces sent their Deputies to make their Submission to *Demetrius*, scarce any standing out, except *Smolensko*, with its Capital City of the same Name, and a few others; so that the Camp was abundantly supplied with all manner of Provisions out of the circumjacent Parts. Things being in this Posture, it was resolved to render the whole Camp more convenient, and accommodate it against the approaching Winter; For which purpose there was not only a very magnificent Structure (after the *Muscovite* Fashion) erected for the Great Duke and Great Dutcheß; but there was scarce a Person  
of

of Quality, or Officer of Note, who had not a House prepared for his Dwelling-place, with all the Conveniencies that could be had, in a well regulated City, the whole Camp being divided into several goodly Streets, with a Market, and other publick Places; the common Soldiers being lodged in Huts, well provided against the approaching Winter-Season. The whole was encompassed with a very strong Line, fortified at certain distances with Redoubts, and good store of Cannon, so that it had the resemblance of a very large and strongly fortified City.

The Inhabitants of *Musco*, tho' not a little disheartned by the general Defection of the Country, and the Neighbourhood of the Enemy, who by the countenance of their Camp seem'd to be resolved not to quit the Enterprize at an easie rate, yet did not lose Courage, and finding themselves depriv'd of all Means to draw Supplies out of their own Country, they had recourse to the same Policy, which *Boris Goudenow* intended to have made use of against the *Poles*, if he had not been prevented by his sudden Death. They were sufficiently sensible, that *Charles*, then King of *Sweden*, who had found Means to exclude his Nephew *Sigismund*, then King of *Poland*, and lawful Heir to the Crown of *Sweden*, from that Crown, would be glad of any Opportunity to stop the Progress of the *Poles*, to prevent their becoming Masters of the Empire of *Muscovy*, which would infallibly open them the way into the *Swedish* Territories. They apply'd themselves therefore to the beforementioned King *Charles*, who, upon their Request, sent them considerable Supplies, and first check'd the course of the Victories of the *Poles*, which gave such Encouragement to many other Provinces of *Muscovy*, that being tir'd with the Insolencies and Exactions of the *Demetrius*, they shook off the *Polish* Yoke, and these being thus entangled in new Difficulties, when they thought themselves upon the point of accomplishing their Design, fell into Dissentions, by the mismanage-

management of *Sigismund* King of Poland, which at last proved fatal, both to *Demetrius*, and the Polish Affairs in *Muscovy*, which was thus unexpectedly delivered from its Enemies, when in all Humane Appearance, they were ready to triumph over them; as it will sufficiently appear out of the Sequel of this History.

For, when the *Poles* saw the *Muscovites* reduced to the greatest Straights that could be, by these intestine Dissensions, raised and fomented by their Contrivance, they judged now to have met with a favourable Opportunity to make themselves Masters of that vast Empire. For which reason, the Senate of the Kingdom of Poland, represented to their King *Sigismund*, how easie it would be for him, at this critical Juncture, to give Laws to both Parties in that divided Empire, if he would shew himself at the Head of a considerable Army, which was ready at hand in Poland, to march up on his first Orders, into *Russia*, where they might live upon the Country, whereas they must now be maintain'd at the Charge of the Republick. Besides the benefit he would reap from this Expedition, in giving Laws to the *Muscovites*, and purging the Kingdom of Poland of a great number of Vagabonds and idle Persons, the remnants of their late civil Dissensions, it would be a glorious Work, to revenge the barbarous Murder of so many of his Subjects, and the detaining of his Ambassadors. The Chief thing objected was; that the Truce made some Years ago betwixt both Nations was not expir'd; But this Objection was soon answered, considering that the *Muscovites* had been the first, who violated it in Massacring the *Poles* against all Laws of Hospitality, and detaining their Ambassadors, against the Law of Nations; but, supposing this to be insufficient, the specious Pretence *Sigismund* might make use of in appearing for *Demetrius*, their lawful Great Duke in Possession of the greatest Part of the Empire, against the Usurper of his Crown and Right, would take off the Blame

G

of



of the Violation of the Truce in the eyes of the World.

King *Sigismund*, being swayed by these important Considerations, alledged by his Council, at last determined to invade *Muscovy* with an Army, to be commanded by himself. In order to this Design, every thing being got ready with all possible speed, he put himself at the Head of an Army, consisting of thirty thousand Men, and in the Year 1609, in *August*, passing the River *Borysthenes*, entered the Territories of *Muscovy*. It is without all dispute, that, if, pursuant to the Advice of the Senate and his Council, he had marched directly to the City of *Musco*, and in conjunction with the *Demetrian* Army, attack'd that City, or at least block'd it up more closely than before; the Inhabitants who were already reduced to great Straits for want of all manner of Necessaries, would soon have been forced to abandon *Zuski*, and to embrace his Party; which done, it would have been no difficult Matter to suppress *Demetrius*, by drawing from his side the *Cosacks* and *Poles* (the main, if not the only Strength of his Army) by great Rewards; and thus, either to render himself absolute Master of the whole Empire, or at least, by coming to a composition with *Demetrius*, to unite all the *Muscovian* Provinces, bordering on *Lithuania* and *Poland* with his Crown. But instead of following these wholesome Counsels, he took quite contrary measures, which rendred his whole Design abortive, and lost his Son *Vladislaus* the Crown of *Muscovy*, as he himself, by his own mismanagement had lost that of *Sweden*. It had been insinuated to him, that if he would march to *Smolensko*, the Capital of the Province of the same name, it would be surrendered into his hands at his first appearing before it. This City, which is seated on the Banks of the *Borysthenes*, and surrounded with a very good Wall of Stone and Brick, was in those days much larger than it is now, it having been much altered from its former Beauty and Wealth by the various Chan-

ces

King Sigismund  
invades  
Muscovy.

ces of War ; and tho' it had no out-works or Ditch, yet this Defect was supply'd by a very numerous Garrison, consisting of thirty thousand Men, besides the Inhabitants, whose number amounted to as many, if not more, that were able to bear Arms ; The Weywode or Governour of the Place, was one *Michael Schin*, an intimate Friend of *Zuski*, who being sufficiently provided with Ammunition, Artillery, Provisions, and all other Necessaries for a long Siege, was resolved to defend it to the last drop of Blood, knowing it to be the only place of Importance in the whole Empire, which remain'd stedfast in the Interest of *Zuski*. *Sigismund* being misguided by some of his flattering Courtiers, as soon as he had pass'd the *Borysthene*s, resolv'd upon an hasty March, and being cajol'd into a Belief, that he was rather going to receive than force *Smolensko*, leaving all his Cannon behind him, march'd with all possible speed towards that City. He was no sooner come in sight of it, but he found himself miserably mistaken, both in his Intelligence and Purpose ; the Garrison making a furious Sally upon him, and being afterwards summon'd to surrender by *Sapiha*, the Chancellor of *Lithuania*, the Weywode *Schin* reject'd his Offers with Scorn. There were not a few at that time in the Army, who advis'd the King not to hazard his Army in the Siege of a Place, which being provided with a numerous Garrison, and resolute in its Defence, would prove a work of great difficulty to gain ; but to take hold of this favourable Juncture, which invit'd him to *Mosco*, the Capital City of the Empire, before they were re-inforc'd with the *Swedish* Auxiliaries ; but the Opinion of the *Lithuanian* Chancellour and his Friends, was most prevailing, who remonstrated, that a few Months would reduce so great a Multitude, however well provided at present, to distress, when restrain'd from Foraging and bringing in Provisions, or at the worst, that a vigorous Attack would in a little time, bring them to better terms ; by which the King having

## The Antient and Present State

secured himself a safe Retreat, might with the less danger march to the Capital City of *Musco*. Pursuant to this Resolution, the King ordered all the Avenues and Passages leading to the City, to be taken up by his Cavalry, and afterwards by making a Line of Circumvallation, to cut off all Communication betwixt the Garrison and the Country. But having not long after received certain Intelligence, that the Place being provided with great store of all Necessaries, this Attempt would in all likelihood prove abortive, they alter'd their Resolution, it being judged most advisable, to change the Blockado into a formal Siege.

Sigismund  
besieges  
Smolens-  
ko.

For which purpose, the King having ordered his Cannon for Battery, and other Instruments for a Siege to be carried thither out of *Lithuania*, the City was besieged in due form. The King's attack was carried on, on the West-side of the place, his quarters extending from the Banks of the River *Borysthene*s to the South. The attack of the *Cosacks* was on the East-side, their Quarters reaching from the South to the same River. The *Sieur Potocki*, Palatine of *Braclov*, had his Post assigned him on the North-side; on the opposite shoar of the *Borysthene*s, to prevent any Succours from coming to the Relief of the Town that way. But the Besiegers advanced but slowly in their Works for want of Foot; for, tho' the King had lately received a reinforcement of five thousand *Cosacks*, yet there being not above ten thousand Foot in his whole Army (which according to the Custom of the *Poles*, was chiefly composed of Horse) these bearing no proportion to so numerous a Garrison, they were continually harrassed by the frequent Sallies of the Besieged, who often drove them from their Trenches, before they could be seconded by their Horse. Their approaches being thus carried on, not without great difficulty, a considerable time was spent, before they could possess themselves of some advantageous Posts near the Walls of the City, which being very convenient for the Besiegers

ers to fetch in their Supplies of fresh Water, put them to some Distress that way, yet not so, but that they had sufficient Opportunity to furnish themselves with it in the night-time, without being perceived by the Enemy, by reason of the nearness of the River. Thus the Siege continued with abundance of Toil, but small Success; the King, who now began to be sensible of his Error, being resolved upon a Punctilio of Honour, not to leave the Place till it were reduced, cost it what it would; so that many of the *Poles*, but especially of the *Cossacks*, paid with their Lives for their King's Obstinacy, who might have been employed with much more Probability of Success against the City of *Musco*.

For, whilst the King was thus wasting his Forces before *Smolensko*; the *Zuskians* having received Advice of the approach of the *Swedish* Troops, sent to their Assistance, began to concert measures how to remove at a further distance the *Demetrian* Forces, that had lain so long at their Doors. They were not ignorant of the Inconveniencies, which the *Poles* labour'd under in the *Demetrian* Camp. They had sufficient Intelligence of their Divisions and Animosities in their Councils, occasioned by the Multitude of their Chief Commanders, who being sway'd more by their particular Interest and Ambition, than the Good of the common Cause, lost many times an Opportunity of annoying the Enemy. This Instability in their Councils, caused much Carelessness in the whole Conduct of their Affairs, which frequently turn'd to their great Disadvantage, as it happned in *My* in the same Year, when a sharp Engagement hapning betwixt the Inhabitants of the City of *Musco* and the *Demetrians*, these had at first the better of them; but making a disorderly Retreat, without the least necessity, and falling to plunder the Dead, gave the Enemy opportunity to Rally, and being reinforced with fresh Troops out of the City, they so furiously charged the *Poles*, that they entirely routed them,



them, most of their Foot being either kill'd or taken Prisoners.

The Disgrace they received not long after at *Twere* must chiefly be ascribed to their divided Counsels; For the *Poles*, having got Intelligence that the *Swedish* Auxiliaries were marching towards *Musco*, sent *Zlarowski* with three thousand Horse to observe their Motion, and to annoy them, if possible, in their March. *Zlarowski* having had the good Fortune to surprize one of their Regiments, which was advanced at some distance before the rest, he cut them all to pieces; This so alarm'd the *Musco-vites*, who had put all the Hopes of their Safety in these Auxiliary Troops, that they march'd out with their whole Strength, and join'd them near the City of *Twere*. The *Poles*, having got Notice of their March, sent also a considerable Reinforcement to *Zlarowski*, who meeting them some few Miles beyond *Twere*, a fierce Engagement ensued, both Parties disputing the Victory with great Obstinacy; The *Polish* Horse attack'd the two Wings of the Enemies with an irresistible Courage, and the *Russians* fighting for the last Stake, behaved themselves like Men resolv'd either to overcome or die; notwithstanding which, they were forced to give Ground, both Wings being after a bloody and obstinate Fight routed by the *Poles*, who killed 8000 (among whom were 1000 *German* Horse) upon the Spot. But the Foot stood all this while unmovable, and had several times made *Zlarowski*, who commanded the main Body of the *Polish* Army, give Ground, and tho' now left by their Horse, had possess'd themselves of an advantageous Post, where they could not be attack'd without great Disadvantage. The *Polish* Horse being extremely tired by the Fatigues of the Day, and the whole Army much inferiour in Number to that of the Enemy, it was not thought advisable to pursue them; but on the contrary, all the ablest and most experienced Officers were of Opinion to rest contented with what Advantage they

Engage-  
ment be-  
tween the  
Poles and  
Musco-  
vites near  
Twere.

they had gotten, and to withdraw to some more advantageous Post. But *Zlarowski*, emulous of the Honour the rest had gotten, would by no means consent to their Advice, and being resolved to try his Fortune, whether he could in some Measure recover the Disgrace he had received in that day's Action, would not stir from his Post tho' expos'd to the Enemies Cannon. So that the rest seeing him resolute, and obstinate against their Counsels they quartered themselves in some of the adjacent Villages. The Enemy having by some Deserters, got notice what Effects their divided Counsels had produced, soon rally'd their Horse, and having rejoined their Foot, by break of Day, fell with such Fury upon the *Poles*, that seeing themselves thus surprized, and in no Capacity to second one another, they fought their Way thro' the Enemy, the Foot retiring to *Twere*, the Horse making the best of their Way to their Camp near *Musco*, with the loss of a great many of their Companions, and all their Artillery and Baggage.

The *Muscovites*, flush'd with this happy Success, march'd directly to *Twere*, where they storm'd the Castle at three several times with more Courage than Conduct; for the *Polish* Foot which got before them within the Place, repuls'd them every time with great Slaughter; so that, despairing of carrying the Place, by reason of its numerous Garrison, they rais'd the Siege, and directed their march towards the River *Wolga*.

At some Miles distance from *Kolassinum*, they were encounter'd by a great Body of the *Demetrian* Horse, who falling in their Rear, brought the whole Arrier-guard in Confusion, till seconded by some fresh Regiments they forced the *Poles* to retire. Besides this, the Licentiousness of their Discipline in the *Demetrian* Camp, had occasioned several Seditions for want of Pay; so that *Demetrius*, to satisfy their Demands, was forced to lay such heavy Taxations upon the Provinces which had sub-

mitted to his Obedience, that at last becoming intolerable, most of the great Cities revolted, and the Country refused to pay any further Contributions, looking upon them as the Fuel that nourished the Flame which had almost consumed them. In some Places they grew so outrageous as to seize, imprison and kill the Tax-gatherers. *Demetrius* therefore to maintain his Authority and to protect his Officers, being obliged to send strong Parties into several Parts of the Country, his Forces in the Camp were consequently reduced to so small a Number, as not to suffice to check the strong Sallies made by those of the City, much less to hinder them from being supplied with all manner of Necessaries out of the Country; which having been several times attempted by the *Poles*, they were as often baffled by the *Muscovites*, always much superiour to them in Number, and becoming every day more courageous, both by the Assistance of their Foreign Auxiliaries, and their Success against the *Poles*, whole General *Rosinski*, in one of the Sallies, the Dispute being very hot, was shot in his side with an Arrow, of which he never perfectly recovered. There is no question, but that if King *Sigismund* could as yet have been prevailed upon to transfer his Arms from *Smolensko* to *Musco*, that by his Authority these Divisions in the *Demetrian* Camp might have been soon composed, and the *Muscovites* frightened by the Accession of so considerable a Force to their Enemies, to have been brought to better Terms; but instead of that, he absolutely resolved not to quit the Place till he had taken it, and his Army being extreamly weakned by the long Continuance of the Siege and the frequent Sallies of a numerous Garrison, and not receiving sufficient Recruits out of *Poland*, or at least not so opportunely as the urgent State of his Affairs required, he took a Resolution to draw his Subjects out of the Service of *Demetrius*, to come to his Aid at the Siege of *Smolensko*, which entirely ruin'd all his affairs in *Muscovy*.

It

It was in vain, that his ablest Counsellours, represented to him, that this unseasonable distracting and weakening the *Demetrian* Party must needs turn to the great Advantage of *Zuski*, who, when the City of *Musco* should be delivered of the Enemy that lay at their Gates, would thereby be confirm'd in his Throne; that the circumjacent Provinces which were kept in awe by the *Demetrian* Army, would soon revolt from him, and *Zuski* thus strengthened by the united Forces of the Empire, would not fail to come to the Relief of *Smolensko*. That therefore he ought rather to furnish *Demetrius* with new Supplies, or at least keep fair with him, and by no means to distract his Forces till he had made himself Master of *Smolensko*, which when taken, he might march without the Opposition to *Musco*; there being no question but that all the *Polish* Forces, and the Places in their Possession, by Promises of great Rewards would without Reluctancy side with him; which would infallibly oblige the *Muscovites* to fall off from *Zuski*, and embrace his Party. It was also call'd in question, whether the *Poles* would be prevailed upon to quit *Demetrius*, from whom they expected the Rewards of all their Toils and Labours, especially since the exhausted Treasury of the Commonwealth of *Poland* was not at present in a Condition to pay their Arrears.

But the King persisting in his Resolution, sent some of his Emissaries into the *Demetrian* Camp, to endeavour by all means possible to perswade the *Poles* to abandon the Interest of *Demetrius*, and to join with the King's Forces before *Smolensko*. At first the King's Agents met with little Encouragement from the *Poles*, who told them that they would not by such an untimely Desertion defraud themselves of the fruit of their Labours, but persevere in their Faith which they had sworn to *Demetrius*, and sent some Deputies to excuse their not joining with the King's Forces before *Smolensko*. But *Sigismund* having promised them their Arrears



## The Antient and Present State

to be paid, and brought over *Rosinski* their General, *Zlarowski*, and some others of the Chief Commanders, to his side, a great many of the Soldiery promis'd to be obedient to the Orders of their King and Chief Commanders, and the rest seeing their Affairs to be in a declining Condition began to waver.

*Demetrius*, not a little terrified at these Proceedings of King *Sigismund*, and fearing, not without Reason, that these few Troops which remained faithful to him might scarce be sufficient to rescue him out of the Hands of the *Poles*, whom he believed to have an Intention to sacrifice him to their Avarice and Interest, he resolved to withdraw secretly out of the Camp, and retire to a Place of more Security. But before he came to this Extremity, he thought convenient to try once more, whether by fair Means he could not prevail upon *Rosinski* to stand stedfast to his Interest; but this having proved fruitless notwithstanding all the most insinuating Rhetorick he could invent, there pass'd very hot Words betwixt them; *Demetrius* upbraiding him with Treachery and Breach of his Word; and *Rosinski* calling *Demetrius* an Impostor, and Son of a Whore.

Demetrius withdraws himself.

*Demetrius*, who would not have brook'd these Words at another time, was fain to put up this Affront with Patience, seeing himself nor in a Condition to revenge them; and not thinking himself any longer secure in a Place where he was treated with so much Rudeness, he took Horse immediately after, and with a few of his intimate Friends retired secretly to *Caluga*. No sooner was the Flight of *Demetrius* known in the Camp, but all the *Muscovite* Boyars and Nobles that had espoused his Interest followed him; and *Marina*, declared, that having not only wedded the good Fortune of her Husband but also his Adversities, she would follow him wherever he went.

The *Polish* Ambassadors employed all their Rhetorick, to perswade her to return into *Poland*, vainly perswading themselves that her Separation from

from *Demetrius*, would be no small Advancement to King *Sigismund*'s Affairs; but she remain'd unshaken in her Resolution, neither could she be prevail'd upon to submit herself to the King's Clemency; The reiterated Perswasions and Prayers of her Father and some other of her most intimate Friends having no further Influence over her Constancy and haughty Spirit, than to comply thus far with their Desires, as to write a Letter to King *Sigismund*, wherein she told him, That tho' she was abandon'd at this time by most of her Friends, yet that, as she had long ago been us'd to the sad Vicissitudes of Fortune, so she lived still in Hopes that the same God who had so often shew'd his Mercy in delivering her from most imminent Dangers, and to whom she entirely recommended herself and her Cause, would know his time when to put a happy End to her Sorrows and Misery. She added, That for the present, being deprived of all her just Right and Title to the *Moscovian* Throne, she relinquish'd all to his Majesty's Disposal, and being well satisfied in his Equity and Generosity, she congratulated his arrival in *Moscow*, wishing him all the Success imaginable. At last she recommended herself and her Family to his Royal Protection, promising herself no less from his Generosity than, under what Circumstances soever, to be treated by him according to her Dignity.

In the mean while, *Demetrius* his Letters arrived in the Camp, which being read publickly, all was in an Alarm and Tumult, no body knowing what Resolution to take; some being for going to *Sigismund*, others for following *Demetrius*, and a third Party siding with neither, being uncertain what side to chuse. The general Complaint was against *Rosinski*, by whose Perfidiousness they said *Demetrius* had been forced to quit the Camp, whereby the Soldiers should be deprived of the Reward of their Blood and Labours.

*Marina,*

## The Antient and Present State

*Marina* taking advantage from their Animofities and Irrefolution, appear'd among them like another Amazon, and with the Charms of her Words and Looks, transported them beyond all bounds. She fpoke to all ſhe met, and calling ſuch of the Commanders, as ſhe knew, by their Names: *Is it poſſible*, ſaid ſhe, *that you can be ſo over-ſeen as to flatter your ſelf into a Belief, that Sigifmund will trouble himſelf to reward the Services done to another; It is from the Great Duke Demetrius, you ought to expect your Stipend, and the full Reward of all your paſt Labours; It is out of the Immenſe Treafure of the Ruſſian Empire, and the prodigious Riches, gathered by the preſent Uſurper, and the Plunder of the rebellious Muſcovites, you ought to be recompens'd for your undaunted Courage; All theſe, if you perſiſt in your faithfulneſs to Demetrius, will be at your Diſpoſal in a little Time; for you may reſt aſſured, that he will think no Recompence too great for thoſe, to whoſe Fidelity and Courage he ſhall be Indebted for his Crown.*

Theſe Words were like Fuel, added to a raging Flame; for a great many of the Soldiers, but eſpecially the *Cofacks*, declared they would follow the Fortunes of *Demetrius*, and began to pack up their Baggage, in order to their departure. *Rofinſki* having in vain, endeavour'd to diſſwade them from their Reſolution, cauſed the Trumpets to be ſounded, being reſolved, with a ſtrong Body of *Polish* Horſe, to ſtop their Paſſage. But theſe perſiſting, both Parties had recourſe to Arms, the *Cofacks* endeavouring to break through the *Polish* Horſe, ſo that a bloody Conflict enſued, the *Cofacks* fighting like Lions, and the *Poles* having the Advantage of their Horſes, the greateſt part of the *Cofacks*, opened their way with their Swords, and marched without any further Oppoſition, directly to *Demetrius*, at *Caluga*; ſome few ran over to the *Muſcovites* in the City; the reſt, with their Commander in Chief, *Zarucki*, were forced to Retreat into the Camp, till a more favourable Opportunity

tunity should present. There were near two thousand kill'd in this Engagement on both sides.

*Marina*, during this Confusion, seeing she had effected what she propos'd to herself, being disguised in Man's Apparel, and fearing lest *Rosinski* should be outrageous to her, if she stay'd till the Engagement was over, she, attended only by a few trusty *Cosacks*, and one Maid, made her Escape, and got safe to her Husband at *Caluga*.

Before her departure, she writ a Letter, which she left in trusty Hands, to be communicated, after her departure, to the Soldiery; wherein she inveighed, in most bitter Terms, against *Rosinski*, telling them, that neither her Husband, nor she being able any longer to resist the Insolence of the perfidious *Rosinski*, had been forced to seek for shelter at *Caluga*, that, for her part, nothing should have induced her to leave the Camp in that Distraction, if it had not been to save her Honour, her Fame, and her Life. That she did not question, but that the Great God the avenger of all Wrongs, would in due time punish the flagitious Perfidy of *Rosinski* and his Adherents; and reward the fidelity of those who remain'd constant to their Vows and Promises to *Demetrius*; from whom they might assure themselves of all they could reasonably desire, after the recovery of his Throne by their Assistance.

The Words of this Epistle being read to the Soldiery, sounded in their Ears no otherwise than an Alarm Bell; every one ran to his Arms, and the General *Rosinski* saw his Tent surrounded, in an instant, with whole Troops of threatening Soldiers. *Is it thee*, cry'd they, *Rosinski*, *that hast by thy Villanies and Insolence, forced the injured Marina to follow her Husband? Is it thee, that by thy Perfideousness, hast betray'd us, to rob us of the due Rewards of our Labours? Either restore us our Prince, or be sure thou shalt not escape the hands of Justice*; They had no sooner spoke these Words, but they made several shots with their Pistols at him, so that, seeing himself



## The Antient and Present State

self in the utmost danger, he made his escape into another Quarter. The revolted Party chose immediately one *Tiskewitz* for their General, declaring publickly, that they would follow their old Lord, *Demetrius*; and cut all in pieces that should oppose them. But, by the Authority and Vigilance of their new General, and the rest of their Chief Officers, they were appeased for that time. But not many days were past, when it having been spread about the Camp (as it is believed by some of *Demetrius's* Messengers) that it was not safe to tarry longer there, in the sight of an Enemy, who questionless, would improve these Divisions and Animosities, to his Advantage; and, if not prevented by their sudden Retreat, make himself a bloody Arbitrator of their Intestine Dissensions. The consideration of so imminent a Danger, raised the Fury of the Soldiers to the highest pitch, who cry'd out aloud, that *Rosinski* intended to sacrifice them to his Ambition, and that they would be gone immediately, and so they fell to packing up their Baggage.

But it having been wisely considered, that if they should march out in separate Bodies, the Enemy might easily intercept their Passage, or at least, be very troublesome to them in their March; wherefore, it was resolved, by mutual Consent, to keep together till they came to *Volock*, where every body should be at his disposal, to take what way he found most convenient for his Purpose.

The De-  
metrian  
Camp broke  
up.

According to this Resolution, they set Fire to their Camp, which for the regularity of its Streets, variety of Structures, and all other Conveniencies, resembled rather a great City, than a Camp; all which being soon consumed by the Flames, they marched in good Order, with their Cannon, Bag and Baggage, to the abovementioned Place: where *Rosinski* and *Zlarowski*, with some thousand Horse, and the remnants of the *Cossacks*, having declared for King *Sigismund*; *Sapiba*, with all his Men, and such others as were resolved to follow the Fortune of

of *Demetrius*, directed their March to *Caluga*, where they were received with all the demonstrations of Joy, their Fidelity deserved.

The *Muscovites* in the City had sufficient Information of the Dissentions that reign'd in the Camp, which they fomented under hand, keeping themselves close within their Walls all this while; for fear, if they should attack them, they might become sensible of their Error, and by the common danger that threatned them, be re-united for their mutual Security; which succeeded so well, that they saw the same puissant Army, which had given Laws to the whole Empire, for the space of two Years, and reduced the Capital City it self, to the last Extremity, to moulder away to nothing, by the intestine Dissensions of their Generals, and the carelessness of their Martial Discipline; but more especially by the mismanagement of *Sigismund* King of *Poland*; who by the unseasonable Distractions, occasioned by his recalling the *Poles* out of the *Demetrian* Camp, was the chief Instrument of the Deliverance of the *Muscovites*, to his great Detriment; for, the Enemy, who before was scarce able to maintain himself within the Walls of *Musco*, being now freed from that Thorn that stuck so deep in his Flesh, soon gathered new Strength; for that the King, who might, if he had given due Encouragement to have *Demetrius*, prosecuted the War at the Expence and Danger of others, or at least, have shared both with them, by his obstinate Perseverance in the Siege of *Smolensko*, drew the whole Burthen of the War upon his own Shoulders, and thus robb'd himself of the Glory and Advantage of making himself the Arbitrator betwixt both the contending Parties. This memorable Siege was rais'd in the beginning of *March*, in the Year 1610.

The Citizens of *Musco* seeing themselves thus deliver'd from their troublesome Neighbours, began now to assume new Courage and Vigour, and having driven the *Poles* out of *Pereſla* and *Alexandria*, moſt of the Provinces which were revolted to *Demetrius*,

## The Antient and Present State

*metrius*, now again declared for *Zuski*, offering considerable Supplies, and promising their utmost Assistance in chasing the *Poles* out of *Moscovy*.

*Zuski*, having conceived new Hopes of Success from the Zeal of his Subjects, march'd to the River *Wolga*, where he recover'd all the Places as yet in the Possession of the *Demetrians*, and forced *Sapiha* (who, as we mention'd before, remain'd steadfast in the Interest of *Demetrius*) to raise the Siege of the strong Convent of *Troitza*.

*Rofinski*, after his Separation from *Sapiha* and the rest of the *Demetrian* Forces, had possess'd himself of *Volock* and the strong Convent of *Offipow*, both which he had provided with a good Garrison, having sent the rest of his Troops under the Command of *Zlarowski* to the King of *Poland* before *Smolensko*. He himself, was by reason of an Indisposition occasioned by a hurt he received before *Musco*, detained at *Volock*; His Distemper increasing every day, by reason of the Distraction of his Mind, created by his late ill Successes, he was at last overcome, more by the Violence of his Grief, than of his Malady, which deprived him of his Life in a strange Country, at that very time when the *Zuskians* were approaching the Place in order to besiege it.

Rofinski  
dies.

*Volviowitz*, the *Zuskian* General, having soon received Intelligence of the Death of *Rofinski*, halted his March, and having immediately caused the Town to be attacked with Vigour, the Garrison all in a Distraction by the Death of their General, surrender'd it in a few Days, without making any considerable Resistance.

From thence he turn'd his Arms to *Offipow*, which he also took, but not without great Difficulty, and the Loss of a great many of his Men. For, this Place being garrison'd by a thousand *French* and *Germans*, they beat off the *Muscovites* in several bloody Assaults, and obliged them to turn the Siege into a Blockade, which having reduced the Garrison to the last Extremity for want of  
all

all manner of Neecessaries, they took a Resolution rather to force their way with their Swords in their Hands thro' the Enemies than tamely to surrender upon dishonourable Conditions. They chose Midnight as the fittest time for the Exploit, when, having refreshed themselves with what Provisions there was left, and having taken their farewell of one another by Embraces, and drinking each a Cup of *Aqua vite*, they made a Sally out of the Gate which leads to *Smolensko*, and like Men resolved to die, attacked the *Muscovites* in their Posts, with an unparallel'd Bravery, of whom a great many were kill'd before they could be relieved by fresh Troops; when their Number increasing continually, they kill'd most of the Garrison (but not without great Slaughter on their side) two hundred only escaping to King *Sigismund's* Camp; And the rest sold their lives so dearly, that some thousands of the *Muscovites* were slain upon the Place.

In the mean while the King of *Poland* had made several fruitless Attacks upon the City of *Smolensko*, the Garrison of which Place defended it self with a most gallant Resolution. The Attempt which was made at the Gate of *S. Michael* by one *Nomorski* a *Polander* and Captain of the King's Guards, deserves among the rest a particular Remembrance here. For he, having fastned a Petard to the abovementioned Gate, laid open a Passage into the Town, and with a few young *Polish* Noblemen entred the City with their Scymetars drawn, cutting down all before them; There is no question but that if they had been vigorously seconded by the rest, the Place must have infallibly fallen into the Hands of King *Sigismund*; But most of them not daring to follow, he and his small Company were over-powered by the great Number of the *Muscovites*, who flock'd to the Defence of the Gate; yet they made good their Retreat, with the Loss of two only of their Companions, leaving behind them most evident Proofs of their Valour among the *Muscovites*; They being



## The Antient and Present State

now forewarn'd, took care to block up their Gates with Earth, and making deep Trenches before them to prevent their being surprized upon the same Account for the future.

*Zuski*, being flush'd with the variety of these Successes, and having got together an Army of above fifty thousand Men, all chosen Troops, a great many of them being *Germans*, *Swedes*, and *French*, was resolv'd to push on his Fortune, and, if possible, to clear *Muscovy*, both of its foreign and domestick Enemies. If he had bent his whole Force against *Demetrius* who at that time lay with the Remnants of his Army near *Caluga*, there is no question but that he might have destroyed him and his Party past all Recovery; but despising his small Number, he committed the Care of them to his *Tartarian* Troops, whilst he with the main Army march'd to the Relief of *Smolensko*.

King *Sigismund* having received timely Intelligence of their Design was not unprepared for their Reception, and having sent *Stanislaus Zolkiewski* with ten thousand Men, to take Possession of some advantageous Posts near *Clusin*, he resolv'd there to expect the Enemy. Not many days were past before the *Muscovites* were advanced within sight of the *Poles*, when pursuant to a Resolution taken in a Council of War, the whole Army was drawn out in order of Battle to attack in their Advantage.

The left Wing of the *Zuskian* Army was composed of *Muscovites*; the Right, of *Swedes*, *French*, and a good Number of *Tartarian* Horse, the main Body consisting most of *Germans*, and some other mercenary Soldiers. The *Poles* were much inferiour in Number to the *Muscovites*, but trusting upon their Courage and the Advantage of the Ground they received the Enemy with great Bravery, who confiding in their Number attack'd them with incredible Fury. The Fight was very bloody, and remained doubtful for some Part of the day; for tho' the *Poles* soon routed the Left Wing com-  
manded

manded by the Brother of *Zuski*, yet the *Swedes* and the *Tartars* in the Right fought it out very gallantly and the *Germans* in the main Body being plac'd upon a Ground full of Shrubs and other Rubbage, where the *Polish* Horse could not advance without great Difficulty, repulsed them several times with great Slaughter; till at last the Right Wing of the *Muscovite* Army being brought first into Confusion, and afterwards totally routed; the *German* Foot seeing themselves deprived of the Assistance of their Horse, and on all sides surrounded by the *Poles*, *Zuski* <sup>rom-</sup> gave the Signal for Parley, which being readily <sup>red.</sup> granted by King *Sigismund*, and the Hostages interchanged, it was agreed that such as should be willing to enter into Pay in the *Polish* Army should be entertained by the King according to their respective Stations, the rest to remain Prisoners of War.

Scarce had the Treaty been signed, and was just upon the Point of being executed, when *De la Garde*, who commanded the *Swedish* Auxiliaries in Hopes that the *German* Foot had maintained their Ground, having rallied the Wings that were broken before, returned to the place of Battle, but being informed of what had pass'd, he intreated the *Germans* to return in Conjunction with the Horse to the Charge. But these were deaf to all his Admonitions and Perswasions, declaring that they would not be guilty of the Breach of the Treaty so lately made with the *Poles*, who there-upon afresh attack'd the *Muscovite* Horse, entirely routed them a second time and after a Pursuit of some Hours, made themselves Masters of their Camp, Artillery and Baggage.

Most of the *German* Foot having taken Service <sup>The Zus-</sup> under King *Sigismund*, he to terrifie the Garrison of <sup>kians rom-</sup> *Smolensko*, ordered a most solemn Triumph to be <sup>red a se-</sup> made in the Camp, where a great Number of Cap- <sup>cond time.</sup> tives, Colours and other Warlike Ensigns of his late obtained Victory, were exposed to the View of the *Muscovites* within the City unto whom having at the same time caused to represent the irre-

coverable Loss of *Zuski* and his Party, after so signal an overthrow, he assured them, that if they did not make use of this last Offer the King intended to make them of deserving his Mercy ; they must infallibly expect to be involved in his Ruin. Most of the Inhabitants shewed a great Inclination to a surrender upon such honourable terms as were offered by King *Sigismund* ; But *Sehin* their Weywode being a Man of an undaunted Courage, would not hearken to any Propositions tho' never so advantageous ; and having represented to them that their Condition was such as to be able to stop the Career of the Victorious *Poles*, and to their eternal Glory, to deserve the Honour of having upheld the declining Fate of their Country against its mortal Enemies, they unanimously resolved to defend themselves to the last Extremity.

In the mean time, the *Muscovites* began to feel the direful Effects of the loss of this Battle ; For, *Sapiba* (now the *Demetrian* General) had routed the *Muscovian Tartars*, near *Twitza*, and cut to pieces another considerable Body of their Troops at *Borowisko*; King *Sigismund*, having got notice, that *Voluidmitz* the *Zuski*an General was, after the last Defeat, retired with a Body of ten thousand Men under *Czaron*, sent thither part of his Army, the very sight of which, so terrified the *Muscovites*, that without striking one Blow, they surrendered to the Conquerour's discretion ; the *Demetrian* Army began to approach a second time their Capital City, and the *Poles* had detach'd a considerable Body from the Siege of *Smolensko*, whom they expected to see every day at their Gates. The worst of all was, that in the last Battle, they had lost the Flower of their Army, and most of their Foreign Auxiliaries, in whom they most confided, the *Germans* having taken Service among the *Poles* ; so that, having not the least prospect of repairing their ruined Troops, nor any other Means left to defend themselves against the Power of two Armies, that were on their march to besiege them more closely than ever, they were at the greatest Plunge,

Plunge, how to extricate themselves out of these impending Miseries.

After various Debates among the Nobles, who most took to Heart the present miserable State of their Country, they had recourse to the same States Policy, which had prov'd successful to their Affairs before, to wit, to try whether by raising new Divisions among the *Poles* and *Demetrians*, they might not find once more an Opportunity to save themselves from this imminent Danger, which, if not soon prevented, threatned their infallible Destruction. To encompass this Design, it was proposed to seize upon the Great Duke *Basili Zuski*, and to give it out that they were resolved to put *Vladislav*, the Son of *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, upon the Throne of *Muscovy*; that thereby they should infallibly ruin the Interest of *Demetrius*, and consequently rid themselves of a vile Impostor, whose very Name was become odious to them, and at the same time, restore immediately Peace to their harassed Country. It was represented, that, tho' they ought to look upon the *Poles*, as their most dreadful and mortal Enemies, that nevertheless, their only Business being now to get time, and to breath a little; the *Poles*, inveigled by their fair Promises, would soon become secure, and furnish them with an opportunity, either quite to elude the Election of *Vladislav*, or, if that was not thought advisable, they might find sufficient Means, at one time or other, to rid their hands of him, under pretence of his Childhood, which, if well tim'd, they might make use of so favourable a Juncture, to endeavour to return their Government into its antient Channel, from whence it had been diverted by the Artifices of their Enemies, and had been the occasion of all the Miseries they had endured of late. This Design, laid upon deep Reasons of State, succeeded at last according to their Expectation, by the mismanagement of the *Poles*, who were, by the good Conduct of the *Muscovites*, not long after, obliged to leave that Empire, and restore to it that Repose,

H ;                      .                      which



## The Antient and Present State

which with vast Expences, and the effusion of a great deal of Blood, they had robb'd it of, for near twenty years before. The *Muscovian* Boyars, and Nobles, having thus concerted measures among themselves, according to which, the Ruin of *Zuski* was resolv'd on, as the only means to encompass the intended Deliverance of their native Country, it was by their Instigation whisper'd about among the Populace, how that *Basili Zuski*, the present Great Duke, ought to be considered, as the Chief Author of all their Misfortunes, who by his Sorceries and Tyranny, had drawn down upon the People of *Muscovy*, the vengeance of God Almighty; and that by his Miscarriages, they were again plung'd into these Miseries, wherewith they saw themselves environed past all Redemption, unless they took new measures for their common Safety.

*Zuski* had, since his accession to the Crown, rendered his Government very obnoxious to the Censures of the Nobles; For, having mounted the Throne, by Blood and fraudulent Means, he began to be jealous of his most trusty Friends, and, to gratifie his Fears, exercised his Cruelties upon several Persons of an eminent Rank, whom he caused to be put to Death upon no other Pretence, than his having secret Intelligence of their Unfaithfulness. As his Reign was one continued Series of Troubles, so when he was at a Plunge, he used to have recourse to Sorcerers and Witchcraft, and, being infatuated by their Perswasions, he committed such Barbarities as are scarce to be named without horror. It was upon this account, he caused the Wombs of big-bellied Women, to be ript open, to make use of the immature Fruit, to accomplish his Enchantments, which, he was vainly perswaded, would be more efficacious against the *Poles*, than his Sword. Some of his Wizzards having foretold him, that one, whose name was *Michael*, should succeed him in the Throne, he caused three of his most faithful Friends and Servants to be made away,

away, for no other reason, but because they bore that name, which for all his barbarous Precautions, was verified in the Person of *Mick. Federowitz*, the present Czar's Grandfather. There were in the great Church within the Castle, amongst other Things of great Value, thirteen Statues, representing our Saviour and the twelve Apostles, all of massie Gold, each of them of the bigness of a Man, valued at near three hundred thousand Pounds Sterling. *Zukj* being at last reduced to great Straights for want of Money, and having, in vain, try'd all the Skill of his Sorcerers, who were not able to supply his present Occasions, he had recourse to the twelve Apostles, whom he displaced from their Station in the Church, and having caused them to be melted down, made use of the Metal for the Payment of his Soldiers. He had so much Grace as to spare the Statue of our Saviour, which the *Poles*, not long after, converted to the same use.

All these Enormities, being now by the Nobles, who had conspir'd his Ruin, improved to his disadvantage, the Populace (whose Darling he was before) prompted more by their Zeal for their golden Statues, than the Love and Welfare of their Country, soon shook hands with the Nobility; and seeing *Demetrius* to meditate a second time the Siege of their Capital City, they, with the same unanimous Consent, wherewith they had raised him before to the Throne, pull'd him down again, and thrust him, with his two Brothers, into a Cloyster.

This done, they sent their Deputies to *Zolkievitzki*, the *Polish* General, who commanded that Body, which was approaching to the City of *Musco*, unto whom they promised to chuse *Vladislaws*, the Prince of *Poland*, for their Great Duke, provided he would defend them against *Demetrius*.

*Zolkievitzki*, gladly accepting of their Propositions, detatch'd immediately a good Body of his best Troops, who being readily admitted into the City, he followed in few days after with the whole Army,

*The Poles  
admitted in  
to the City  
of Musco.*

pitching his Tents on the East-side of the City, as *Demetrius* was encamped on the Western part. Some time being spent in Consultations, betwixt the *Muscovites* and *Poles*, the first opened their Gates to the last, so that *Zolkievitzki*, marching with his whole Army through the City, fix'd his Camp near to that of *Demetrius*, who, tho' not a little surpris'd at this sudden and near approach of the *Poles*, yet was forced to put the best Countenance he could upon the Matter, and to smother his present Resentment.

There being thus a communication, and seeming friendly Correspondence maintain'd betwixt both Camps, *Zolkievitzki* found it no very difficult Task to debauch that Body of *Polish* Horse, Commanded by *Spidha*, which hitherto had remain'd stedfast in the Interest of *Demetrius*; These having received the publick Faith of the Commonwealth of *Poland* for the Payment of all their Arrears, unanimously revolted, and declared for King *Sigismund*.

*Zarucki*, the General of the *Cossacks*, and *Kafinowski*, Prince of the *Tartars*, that served in the *Demetrian* Camp, both intimate Friends of *Demetrius*, seeing themselves thus deprived of the assistance of the *Polish* Horse, the main strength of their Army, and that the City of *Musco* was defended by a great Body of *Poles*, both within and without its Walls, began now to despair of the Fortune of *Demetrius*; and thinking it not advisable to involve themselves in his Ruine, they resolv'd to embrace the Party of the Conquering *Pole*, expecting to reap from the Success of *Sigismund*, the Fruits of their past Labours.

Demetrius retreats from before Muscovy.

Whilst these were preparing to wait upon the King before *Smolensko*, *Demetrius* forsaken not only by the *Poles*, but also by them he most confided in, and seeing himself and his Affairs expos'd to Despair, sought once more for Refuge at *Calga*, which, having served him as a Shelter before, now received him again with open Arms.

The *Muscovites*, being thus freed from *Demetrius*, would fain have recalled their former Promise of Electing *Vladislans* their Great Duke, alledging that they could not proceed to his Election till he were present in Person, to confirm to them by Oath, the maintenance of their Religion and Ancient Customs. But *Zolkievitzki*, having declared in the Name of King *Sigismund*, that he would not quit the City with his Army till he saw Prince *Vladislans* seated upon the Throne, and that therefore he exhorted them to fulfil their solemn Promise without any further Tergeversations, unless they would expose their Capital City to inevitable Destruction; and that he was ready to swear to such Articles in the Great Duke's Name, as should be agreed betwixt them; they judged it most adviseable not to exasperate the *Poles*, who at present had two potent Armies one in the very Bowels of the City of *Musco*, the other in the Empire before *Smolensko*.

These Considerations at last prevailing over the Aversion they had against the *Poles*, and being persuaded that the Childhood of *Vladislans* could not but furnish them, in a little time, with an Opportunity of ridding their Hands of him, as they had done of both the *Demetrius's*, they proceeded with all the usual Solemnities to the Election.

The chief Conditions were; That a general Amnesty and Act of Oblivion should be passed; and all their Ancient Customs and Privileges confirmed and established.

That the new Great Duke *Vladislans* should, with all convenient Speed, come in Person into *Russia*.

That he should conserve their Religion inviolable, and for the better Settlement of the same and the whole Kingdom, abjure the *Roman Catholick* Faith, and embrace the *Greek* Religion.

*Zolkievitzki* and some of the great Officers of the *Polish* Army having confirmed these Articles by Oath in the Name of the new Great Duke, he was, tho' absent, proclaimed with the usual Ceremonies and



Uladislaus and Fealty sworn to him by all the Boyars, Nobles, proclaimed and Chief Officers there present, as Great Duke and Emperour of *Russia*, with great Demonstrations of Joy, and the Acclamations of the People.

As a further Pledge of their Fidelity, and to remove all the Shadow of Dissimulation from themselves, they sacrificed *Zuski* and his two Brothers to the present Exigency of the State, who were surrendered into the Hands of *Zolkievitzki*, and by his direction sent to *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, where the unfortunate *Zuski*, with one of his Brothers, after having been forced to adorn the Triumph of King *Sigismund* and *Zolkievitzki*, ended his Days in Prison, as will appear out of the following Chapter.

### C H A P. III.

*Containing a full Relation of the Revolutions which hapned in Muscovy, from the time of the Election of Uladislaus, Son of Sigismund King of Poland, till the Beginning of the Reign of Michael Federowitz, the present Czar's Grandfather.*

*Zolkievitzki*, the Polish General, having in the Name of the new Great Duke *Uladislaus* taken Possession of the Castle of *Musco*, and the Royal Palace, with a Guard of a Thousand Poles, it was unanimously resolved to send a splendid Ambassy to King *Sigismund* before *Smolensko*, to make a Tender of the Crown of *Muscovy* to his Son *Uladislaus*, and to desire his Confirmation of the Articles agreed on betwixt the *Russians* and the Polish General.

The Ambassy being composed of some of the Chief Boyars of the Empire, attended with a most magnificent and numerous Train; they were received with more than ordinary Honour by King *Sigismund*, who sent out the whole Body of Horse from before *Smolensko*, with all the great Officers of the Army, and his Courtiers, to receive them at some Distance from the Camp.

Being introduced into the King's Presence, they addressed themselves in a Speech full of Flattery and Dissimulation, under which they hid their secret Aversion to the *Poles*. They told him how overjoy'd they were to see that Day which they hoped would restore Tranquility to their harrassed Country, by the Choice they had lately made of his Son *Uladislaus* for their Great Duke, humbly beseeching the King, that in regard of the near Interest he now had in their Preservation, he would vouchsafe to take them and their afflicted Country into his Royal Protection, as the only Means to revive the former flourishing State of the *Russian* Empire, which had been reduced to the very Brink of Ruin by their intestine Divisions. That their late Election having been unanimous and founded upon Hopes of their future Felicity, they begg'd of his Majesty not to deny them their earnest Request, but to send as soon as possibly might be, their Prince into *Russia*, in order to let them enjoy the Comfort of his Presence and Protection, and to compleat their Election by Crowning him Great Duke and Emperour, with the usual Ceremonies, in the Royal City of *Musco*. They related to him the Conditions upon which he was to be received, as we have related them in the foregoing Chapter; They enlarged themselves much in praise of the *Greek* Religion, and how necessary it would be for the Prince to accommodate himself to the Rites of the *Muscovian* Church, which they said, ought to be looked upon as the Foundation-Stone of that Monarchy, from whence depended the common Safety, both of Prince and People;

The Muscovites render the Crown to *Uladislaus*.

ple; all which they recommended to his Royal Wisdom.

King *Sigismund*, who was not ignorant that these subtle Insinuations proceeded more from the present Necessity of their Affairs, than any good Will either to himself or the *Polish* Nation, was not wanting to give them an Answer suitable to the present Occasion. And having received their Message with a very serene Countenance and seeming Gladness, he answered them in general Terms; That he could not but receive the Honour conferr'd upon his Son by the Offer of the Crown of so great an Empire with a great deal of Gladness, but that as the chiefest Satisfaction he took in their Election, was their unanimous Consent, so he assured them, that he should look upon it as an indispensable obligation, to assist at all times hereafter their Country with his Aids and Counsels, by which means he hoped a mutual good Correspondency might be established betwixt these two potent neighbouring Crowns of *Muscovy* and *Poland*, to their mutual Advantage. And as to what related to the Particulars of the Treaty, they being of such a Nature as to deserve a particular Consideration, he would, after having well weighed the Matter, send his full Instructions to his General *Zolkievitzki*, Resident in the City of *Musco*, with whom the whole Matter might be compleated at their own Homes, to the Satisfaction, as he hoped, of both Parties.

The Ambassadors being in all outward Appearance very well satisfied with this Answer, there passed abundance of Caresses betwixt them and the *Polish* Lords, by whom they were sumptuously feasted at sundry times, with such mutual Professions of Friendship, as if they had been but one People; The same Kindness was shewn betwixt the *Muscovites*; and *Poles* in the City of *Musco*, whereby the Inhabitants being inveigled into a profound Security, the *Poles* found Means by degrees to creep into the Castle, to the Number of six or seven

seven thousand, which afterwards proved fatal to that City.

The Ambassadors having not long after demanded their Audience of Leave from *Sigismund* in order to their Departure; the King in return to their Demand, asked from them the Surrender of *Smolensko* in the Name of Prince *Vladislav*, elected and proclaimed Great Duke of *Russia*; unto which they having answered, That they had nothing of it in their Instructions, and that they were of Opinion the *Russians* would be unwilling to surrender a Place of such Importance till the Great Duke were come in Person to the Capital City, and Crowned and sworn to the Performance of the beforementioned Articles, they were not permitted to depart till further Orders. For, King *Sigismund* having fully weighed the whole State of the Matter, and especially their Refusal of the Surrender of *Smolensko*, began to be more and more convinced of their fraudulent Dealings; and knowing that it was not their free Choice, but the absolute Necessity of their Affairs that had raised his Son to the Throne, he had all the Reason to fear, that when he had withdrawn his Forces out of *Muscovy*, they would make their Advantage by the Unexperience of his Son, and juggle him out of the Throne. But if he should forbear to send him till he came to his riper Years, they would from thence, without question, take Occasion to recall their Choice, and elect another in his stead. And, considering that he had reduced them to such Straights, as had made them take those Measures so little suitable to their Inclinations, but meerly invented to disintangle themselves out of their present Distresses, he looked upon it not only as inglorious by accepting their Conditions to receive instead of imposing Laws upon them, but also quite inconsistent with his own Interest and the Safety of his Son.



## The Antient and Present State

All his Thoughts therefore, were bent upon the Siege of *Smolensko*, which when taken, he supposed he might appear among them as a Conquerour, and prescribe such Laws to the deceitful *Muscovites*, as should be most consistent both with his Honour and Safety. This was the Resolution of *Sigismund*.

But his ablest Counsellors were of a quite different Opinion; For, tho' they were no less satisfied in the deceitful Intentions of the *Muscovites*, than the King himself; yet did they not judge it advisable, to drive Matters to extremities, and to commit that to the hazard of the Sword, which might be obtained without Opposition. They represented to the King, that the Conquest of so vast an Empire, could not be obtained without the effusion of much Blood, and the Expence of vast Treasures; whereas, if what had been sworn to by *Zolkievitzki*, by the King's Orders, were confirmed, he might in one day, make himself Master of all *Muscovy*. They advised him therefore, not to give the opportunity to an unstable People to take new measures, who perhaps, when driven to Despair, might side with *Demetrius*; which would take away all his Pretences of invading that Empire, since he had undertaken his Expedition under the pretext of assisting him in the Recovery of his Right; But to send Prince *Uladislaws*, assisted by a good Body of Troops, and some able Counsellors, to the City of *Musco*, where he being receiv'd and Crown'd Great Duke *Russia*, might with their Assistance easily elude the Practices of the *Muscovites*. That by this means, *Smolensko* would fall on course into his Hands, and his Army, besides this, might be paid all their Arrears out of the Great Duke's Treasure, as belonging to *Uladislaws* their Prince, who else, as the Case now stood, would be an intolerable Burthen for the Commonwealth of *Poland*. And as to what related to the Articles, they might without much Difficulty, be either quite evaded, or at least delay'd, till the Prince, strengthen-

strengthened with fresh Supplies out of *Poland*, should find himself in a Capacity to Rule this false and stubborn People by such Laws, as he should judge most convenient, and suitable to his own Interest. But these wholesome Counsels had no great Influence over the King, who being prepossessed with a vain Punctilio of Honour, not to rise from before *Smolensko* before it was taken, and with the pernicious Insinuation of his Flatterers, who periwaded him, that the Place was reduced to that extremity, as not to be able to hold out long against him, he resolved to leave nothing unattempted which might contribute to the Rendition, or forcing of that important City.

For which Reason, he caused a new Battery to be raised, from whence, and some others the *Poles*, fired so furiously upon the Town, that after some time, they laid flat a great Part of the Wall, and ruined two Bastions. Upon which it was resolved to assault the Place, which was executed with a great deal of Bravery; But those within, by reason of the Numerousness of the Garrison, having had sufficient time to raise strong Retrenchments, fortified with Pallisado's, and a good Ditch behind the Breach, the *Poles* were not able to lodge themselves in the Breach, notwithstanding their reiterated Attacks, made with the greatest Bravery imaginable, were repulsed with great Slaughter.

After this ill Success of the *Poles*, the *Muscovites*, who hitherto had but murmured and whispered their Complaints, began to explain publicly against the Breach of the Articles, the detaining their Ambassadors against the Laws of Nations, and the Outrages and Insolencies of the *Poles*, who being got into the entire Possession of the Castle and Principal Ports of the City of *Musco*, committed Violences upon the Citizens, their Wives and Saints, at the last of which they shot with their Pistols; which being a thing intolerable to People insatuated with Superstition and Zeal for their Images, would certainly have produced violent Commotions

ons among them, at that time, if they had not been over-aw'd by the great Number of *Poles*, within the bowels of their own City, and which was the most prevailing, that they saw *Demetrius* encrease again in strength at *Caluga*.

For *Zarucki*, the General of the *Cosacks*, and *Kazinowski*, Prince of the *Tartars*, who, as we said before, had left him, at his second Retreat from before the City of *Musco*, finding their Reception to bear no proportion with the Reward they proposed to themselves from King *Sigismund*, and seeing themselves despised by the Nobility of *Poland*, were since return'd to the Service of *Demetrius*, who countenanced by their Return, began to look up again, and having drawn new Supplies out of the adjacent Places, began to appear formidable at *Caluga*, and would in all likelihood have once more appeared in the Field, if he had not been prevented by his sudden and untimely Death, which happened thus :

*Kazinowski*, the *Tartarian* Prince, who was lately return'd to his Service, had given him great Occasion of suspecting his Fidelity ; wherefore *Demetrius*, to prevent the Design, which he believ'd to be form'd against his Life by the said *Tartarian* Prince, caused him to be thrown into the River *Occa*, and drowned there. The *Tartars*, but especially his Guards, enraged at the Death of their Prince, resolved to revenge it upon *Demetrius*, with the first Opportunity, which was not long before they met with it, according to their intended Design. For it is to be observed, that *Demetrius*, ever since his last Retreat from before *Musco*, was grown excessive Melancholy, which he was used to divert frequently with Drinking, endeavouring to drown his Cares in Liquor. Having been one day a Hunting, he retir'd towards night with some of his most intimate Friends to the Enjoyment of his Customary Comfort, the Bottle, without any Guards about him. The *Tartars*, who had formed the Design against his Life, having got no-

rice of it, secretly got near to his Quarters, and finding him, and his Friends involved in Liquor, and a most profound Security, broke in upon him, and slew him and some of his Friends, who endeavoured to stop their Entrance, upon the place.

*Demetrius slain.*

This was the End of this Second *Demetrius*, who, from a mean and sordid Fortune, was raised to so eminent a Station as to have bid fair for the *Russian* Empire, till he met with his deserved Death among his own Servants and Friends. He is agreed by all Hands to have been an Impostor, some affirming his first Origin to have been a Schoolmaster, others supposing him to have been a Jew, because in his Closet were found several Hebrew and Talmudical Books, which are Materials not belonging to the Profession of the *Russian* Schoolmasters, whose Learning rarely exceeds Reading and Writing.

But whoever he was, it is certain that he was an Impostor, and slain by the *Tartars*, who did not long escape Vengeance; For, *Marina* had no sooner received this dismal News, which at one Stroke robb'd her of all her great Expectations, but, being seized with the most violent Apprehensions in the World, and transported with Grief and Rage, without any Respect to her Quality and Sex, tore her Hair and Face, and thus running into the Streets, cryed out, like a distracted Creature, *Either restore me my Husband Demetrius, or else take pity of me, and let the same Swords that so barbarously murdered him send me also to the Grave.* After the first Transports were a little over, she ran in great Fury, with a Dagger in her Hand, to the Quarters of the *Cosacks*, and calling to those she knew by their Names; *Dear Friends*, said she, *either revenge the Murder of my dear Lord, or at least do not refuse to do an Act of Charity towards me; take here, cry'd she, this Dagger, and with it deliver me from that Life, which, since the fatal End of my Husband, cannot but be loathsome and burthensome to me.* The *Cosacks*, not able to resist the Tears and Prayers of this charming



## The Antient and Present State

ing Lady, fell with great Fury upon the *Tartars*, whom they massacred wherever they met them in the Streets, and very few would have escaped their Fury, had they not at last been appeased by the Perswasions of their Leader *Zarucki*.

*Artind*  
*D me-*  
*iii. s.*

After the *Cosacks* had sacrificed several Hundreds of the *Tartars* to the *Mines* of *Demetrius* and the just Resentment of *Marina*, those of *Caluga* chose and proclaimed the Son of *Demetrius* and *Marina*, Emperour of *Russia*; and tho' it is most generally believed that *Marina* was barren, and this pretended Son a supposititious Child, yet *Zarucki* the General of the *Cosacks* being willing to carry on the Imposture in Opposition to the *Polish* Interest, address'd himself to the *Russians*, offering them his Aid with all his Forces, if they would engage to acknowledge, after the Example of *Caluga*, this Son of *Demetrius*, Great Duke and Emperour of *Russia*, so soon as they should have chased the *Poles* out of *Muscovy*.

*Zolkievitski* in the mean time perceiving himself slighted by King *Sigismund*, whom he found to have taken quite contrary Measures to what had been agreed on betwixt him and the *Muscovites* by the King's Order, he left the Army under Pretence of going to fetch Prince *Vladislaus* to *Musco*, and taking his Way by *Smolensko*, to shew his Discontent, he only saluted the King, and, without any further stay, retired into *Poland*.

The Affairs of *Russia* having thus for a while hung in Suspence, whilst the People were kept under by the apprehension of a double Danger, to wit, from the *Poles* within the Gates of their Capital City, and the *Demetrian* Forces at *Caluga*, they began now to change Face, and to appear with another Countenance.

For the *Muscovites*, after the departure of the *Polish* General, finding King *Sigismund* resolute in not sending his Son *Vladislaus* into the Empire, and in the Continuation of the Siege of *Smolensko*, and seeing that both the Captive *Zuski's* and their Ambassadors

ambassadors were sent away Prisoners into *Poland*, and that the King took upon him the supreme and absolute Administration of Affairs, putting such Officers into all Places of Trust, as he thought most convenient for his Purpose, they began to conceive great Jealousies; and being now by the Death of *Demetrius* delivered from their Fear on that side, prepared for an open Revolt, in order to prevent their Empire from becoming a Province of *Poland*, which they look'd upon to be the main Design of King *Sigismund*.

Whilst he therefore wasted himself at the Siege of *Smolensko*, which he thought ignominious to abandon before it was reduced, and thereby let slip the most favourable Opportunity in the World, of Establishing his Affairs in that Empire, the *Muscovites* had, by his Delays, sufficient Leisure given them to reunite themselves and make Provisions for their future Security.

The first that appeared in Arms, towards the beginning of the Spring in the Year 1611, was one *Lepanovits*, a Man of a great and ancient Family in *Muscovy*; he having a great Interest in the Country, had made secret Levies, and appearing with a Body near *Pereysla*, invited and gained most of the Boyars and Nobility of the neighbouring Provinces into his Party; He also sent his Messengers into the more remote Parts, to represent to his Countrymen the Breach of Faith of the *Poles*; how they had possessed themselves of their Capital City, broke the Articles agreed on betwixt both Nations, by continuing the Siege of *Smolensko*, and not sending their Prince *Vladislav* into *Muscovy*; how that they, not only kept the *Zuski's*, but also their Ambassadors Prisoners against the Laws of Nations, and, in all other Respects, treated them not like a free People, but as Slaves depending from the Mercy of their Conquerours. He exhorted them to shake off this Foreign Yoke, and by giving timely Assistance to secure themselves and their Posterity against the Insolencies of their mortal Enemies the *Poles*.

## The Antient and Present State

This had the desired Effect; for the Country flocked in from all Parts, so that another great Army was raised near *Nis Novgorod*, under the Command of *Prosomecki* Lord of a very eminent Rank in *Muscovy*; and *Zarucki* joined his Forces with them, under Condition, that so soon as they should have cleared their Country from the *Poles*, they should proclaim the Young *Demetrius*, their Great Duke and Emperor, which they were very free to promise, tho' they had not the least Intention to perform it, as *Zarucki* found afterwards to his Cost.

The *Poles* were not unadvertised of the Designs of the *Muscovites*, but the King's Forces before *Smolensko* being scarce sufficient to carry on the Siege against a strong Garrison, he could not spare any to disperse these Levies, and the *Poles* within the City of *Musco* had enough to do to maintain their Posts, and keep that vast Multitude of People in subjection; so that these Levies, from a small Beginning being improved into a great Bulk, the *Polish* Forces which were quartered up and down in the Country, to keep it in Obedience, were so far from being able to attack them, that they were scarce sufficient to keep on the Defensive.

The Inhabitants of the City, being now encouraged by these *Muscovian* Lords appearing in Arms, thought it now time to throw off the Mask, and to give the *Poles* very sensible Proofs of their Aversion towards them. A Design therefore was laid among them, upon a Signal given to assemble and massacre all the *Poles* within the City.

The City of *Musco* was at that time much bigger than it ever was before or since, by Reason of the vast Confluence of Strangers, who during these intestine Commotions were retired thither out of all the neighbouring Provinces for Sanctuary, so that it was computed to comprehend in its Circuit above a Hundred and fifty Thousand Houses. All this vast Multitude of Inhabitants being enrag'd to the highest Pitch against the *Poles*, were ready to lend a helping

helping Hand to accomplish the Design of the Conspirators, they only wanting a Head to lead them on to put it in Execution.

A thing of this Nature could not be carried on so privately, but that *Gazionski*, who then commanded the *Poles* in Chief, had timely Notice of their projected Design, but thinking it not advisable to be the first Aggressor, he dissembled his Notice, and contented himself with fortifying the two Quarters of the City called *Catangorod* or the Mid-City, and *Czargorod* or the City-Royal, which being surrounded with good Stone-Walls, and containing the Castle, with the Royal Palace, all the Magazines, and great Houses of the Nobility and Merchants, he proposed to himself as a safe Retreat upon all Occasions.

The *Polish* General *Gazionski* had scarce finished his Works, before the *Russians* finding by the Precautions used by the *Poles*, that their Design had taken vent, resolved to put it in Execution, trusting more in their Number than their Conduct, and having on the third day after *Palm-Sunday* drawn together an incredible Number of People by the Ringing of the Bells, they attack'd the *Poles*, with a Fury past all Belief, as Men resolv'd either to accomplish their Design, or to die in the Attempt.

The *Poles*, on the other Hand, being surrounded and attack'd on all sides, animated by Despair, and having the Advantage of a well regulated Discipline against a confused Multitude, repulsed their Enemies with great Vigour, who, tho' most obstinate and furious in their reiterated Assaults, were nevertheless at last forced to give way to the Bravery of the *Poles*, who made them retreat with the Loss of near Ten thousand Men on their side. No sooner had the *Poles* removed them from their Works, but they sallied out with some thousand Men, and having prosecuted their Victory, and slain a great Number of them at a great distance from their Quarters, they see all the circumjacent Parts of the

*The Poles  
attacked in  
the City of  
Mosco.*



City on fire, which destroyed not only a prodigious Number of Houses, but also of Women, Children and other helpless Persons. The next day the *Polish* General, having received Intelligence that most of the Inhabitants of *Musco* were retired to the Suburbs called *Sirelitza Slavoda*, which lies South of *Cataygorod* or the Mid-City, on the opposite Shore of the River *Moska*, where they were disputing the Passage to *Strasins*, who, with a good Body, was come from *Malsaisko*, upon the first News of the Tumult, to the Relief of his Countrymen, he made a strong Sally, and having caused the said Suburbs to be set on fire in several parts, he burnt it quite to the Ground, thereby facilitating the Passage of the *Poles* who came to his Assistance and securing to himself a free Communication, which stood him in great stead afterwards upon several Occasions.

*The City of Musco burnt by the Poles,*

It is computed that a Hundred and twenty Thousand Houses were laid in Ashes by that raging Element, and that by the Fire and Sword there fell near Two hundred Thousand of the Inhabitants of all Sorts, besides an incredible Quantity of Stores and Merchandises.

The Remainders of the Inhabitants seeing their City thus laid in Ashes, and themselves sufficiently tamed by the Sword, implored the Mercy of the conquering *Poles*, rejecting (as it is usual in such Cases) the Fault upon a few of their Ringleaders, who had paid for it with their Lives. The *Poles* knowing themselves not in a Capacity to do any further Mischief, and being glad to have reduced them to ask Quarter, granted it without Difficulty. But as it was owing to the utmost necessity of their Affairs, so this Truce so earnestly sued for by the *Muscovites*, lasted not long. For the Inhabitants of *Musco* having invited *Lepanovits*, *Proszowiecki*, *Zarucki*, and the rest of the Leaders of the Army, we mentioned before, to come to their Assistance, they advanced with a Hundred thousand Men towards the City, upon whose Approach having joined with their

their Forces, they forced the *Poles* into their Works where they were so closely besieg'd, that they had but one Passage left open for their Communication with the Country, which was that part on the other side of the River *Moska*, where not long before had stood the Suburbs called *Strelitza Slavoda*, and which they kept open a long time for the Convenience of their Provisions and other Supplies, and made frequent Sallies with great Success on their side, till at last by the ill Conduct of King *Sigismund*, they were forced to abandon that Post, and soon after, the whole City, to the irreparable detriment of the said King.

For whilst the brave *Poles* were hardly pressed upon by their Enemies, he lay immovable at the Siege of *Smolensko*, where his Affairs began to look with a very ill Face. For the Soldiers, tired with the long Continuance of the Siege, grew very uneasy for want of Pay, and their Clamours were now risen to that height, that the King began to dread every day a Mutiny, having not wherewithal to satistie their just Demands, nor any other Means now left to raise Money, unless by calling together a Dyet, which at last was resolved on, and a Convention of the Estates appointed against the September next following; This Remedy, tho' somewhat slow, to satistie the greedy Appetite of the Soldiers, yet were they (in Hopes of a happy Success of that Assembly) thereby appeased for that time.

The King, in the mean time, considering with himself, that the Measures he had taken in *Muscovy*, contrary to the Advice of the Senate and his Council, having proved abortive, would not be very agreeable to the Convention, he resolved to make another Attempt for the Gaining of *Smolensko*, not questioning but, that, if he could appear at the next Dyet as a Conquerour, it would in a great measure take off the Blemish of his former Conduct in the *Muscovian* War. A general Assault being therefore resolved on to be made on the 13th.

day of *June*; the Soldiers encouraged by the Hopes of the Booty of so vast and rich a City, shewed a great Eagerness to attack the Place.

Smolen-  
sko stor-  
med.

The Assault was made on the East side, by the Palatine of *Braclov*, and on the West, where then was the King's Quarters, by General *Wjer*, who commanded the *Germans*. The Soldiers had found means before break of day to raise Ladders in several places upon the Walls, unperceived by the Enemy; so that, at the Signal given, the *Germans* first mounted and got up to the Top of the Walls, as did also, not long after, the *Poles*, under the Command of the Palatine, without much Opposition from the Enemy, who being thus attack'd upon a sudden, when they least expected it, those Forces that were left for the Guard of the Walls were not sufficient to stop the furious Assault of the *Poles*. But the Descent from the Wall into the City being very steep, and the whole Garrison having by this time taken the Alarm, came flocking in great Numbers to the defence of their Walls, the Combat grew very hot, the *Poles* pushing forward with great Bravery to maintain the Advantage they had got, and the Garrison armed with Despair fighting like Men either resolved to vanquish or die; so that the Dispute remained very doubtful, and perhaps would have ended to the Disadvantage of the *Poles*, if the same *Novodorski*, whom we mentioned before to have so bravely attacked the Gate of *S. Michael*, had not come to their Assistance.

For he having, whilst they were engaged upon the Walls, found means to apply a Petard at a certain small Gate on the side of the *Borisphenes*, he open'd a sufficient Passage for him and the King's Guards which were under his Command: In the Head of whom he, being seconded by the Marshal of *Lithuania*, *Dero-stanski*, with some Volunteers, assaulted and entered the Place, and having slain a few who opposed their Entrance, they marched without any further Opposition directly to the Market-place, where having fix'd their Banners, they soon made them-  
selves

selves Masters of the whole City. For the Garrison who were engaged with those upon the Walls, seeing the Enemy in the Heart of their City, and infatuated with Fear occasioned by the Suddenness of the Adventure, threw down their Arms, quitted their Stations, and left a free Passage for the Besiegers to enter in on all sides upon them. In a Moment there was nothing but Horror and Confusion. <sup>Smolen-  
sko taken  
by storm.</sup> to be seen throughout the City. For the *Poles*, enraged at the long Resistance of the Besieged, put all they met to the Sword, Men, Women and Children, without distinction of Age or Sex, so that the Streets were every where fill'd with Blood and Slaughter.

A great Number of the Citizens run with their Wives and Children, who made most horrible outcries, to the great Church, where being assaulted by the *Poles* they defended themselves valiantly for some time, but being at last overcome, they set fire to some Barrels of Powder that had been laid up there, and thus blew themselves, with such of the *Poles* as were entred, into the Air, chusing rather to perish by this furious Element, than the Hands of their bloody and merciless Enemies.

*Sehin* the Weywode or Governour was retired with about twenty of the principal Officers into a little Tower upon the Wall, where being surrounded and attacked on all sides by the *Poles*, they defended themselves like Lyons, declaring that they would not surrender unless to one of the General Officers of the Army. The Governour had used some of the *Polish* Prisoners very cruelly, so that dreading the Vengeance of the *Poles*, if he should fall into their Hands, he was resolved rather to die, than surrender to their Mercy. It happned very luckily, that *Porocki* a General Officer among the *Poles*, advanced near that Way, who having enquired into the Cause of this Resistance made by a few Men, Word was brought him, that it was the Governour of the Place, who refused to surrender unless to



one of the principal Officers ; upon which he came to the Place where *Sehin* with his Comrades yielded themselves immediately Prisoners of War.

Thus was this great City, after having endured a Siege of near two Years, taken in a few Hours, in *June*, in the Year 1611. The Honour of which ought chiefly to be ascribed to the Bravery and Conduct of *Bartholomew Novodorski*, Knight of *Malta*, and Captain of the King's Guards ; who by his timely opening a Passage with his Petard was the main Instrument of the Gaining of the Place ; without which that Attempt of Scaling the Walls would in all likelihood have prov'd unsuccessful, or at least would not have been effected without the Slaughter of a great many of the Besiegers ; whereas it was now purchased with the Loss of a few among the *Poles*. The Place being thus secured, strict Orders were sent throughout all the Quarters of the City, to give Quarter, and that the King had given the Pillage of the City to the Soldiers, as the Reward of their past Fatigues and Dangers. But the Soldiers, especially the  *Germans*  and *Poles*, not agreeing about the distribution of it, were upon the point of coming to Blows, when the King ordered all the Booty to be brought into one place in order to make an equal Dividend among them. But whilst they were busie in executing the King's Command, a Fire hapning, by what Accident is unknown, consuming in a little time all the vast Wealth of that rich City, and burnt a great part of it.

Notwithstanding a Siege sustained of near two Years, there was found in the Magazines Provisions and Ammunition for three Years longer ; so that if they could have had fresh Supplies of Men, the Place might have been defended much longer, the Garrison and Inhabitants which at the beginning of the Siege consisted of near fourscore thousand Men, able to bear Arms, being reduced to eight or nine thousand, who nevertheless might probably have made good the Place against the assailants up-

on the Wall, if they had not been more conquered by their own Fears occasioned by the sudden Entrance of *Novodorski*, than by the Power of their Enemies.

The *Muscovites* being under a great Consternation after the taking of *Smolensko*, who expecting no less than to see the whole *Polish* Army in a little time at the Gates of the City of *Musco*, redoubled their Fury, attacking the *Polish* Garrison in the Castle with their utmost Vigour, but these being encouraged by the Success of their King, disputed every Inch of Ground with the Enemy, who, notwithstanding their vast Number, were not able to drive them from that Post by which they kept a Communication with the Country.

*Sigismund*, on the other Hand, was advised by his most able Counsellours, not to lose the Fruits of his Victory, but to improve it to the utmost, by carrying the Terror of his victorious Arms to the Gates of the Capital City, where having a considerable Party, even among the *Russians* themselves, the Reputation of his late Success could not fail to produce strange Effects among the *Muscovites* to his Advantage; That if he would but march to the Relief of his Subjects, who there disputed his Interest with all the Bravery imaginable, it was very probable he might keep in Possession of that great City, which if once in his Power, the rest of the Provinces of that Empire would be soon compelled to receive his Dictates, especially if they saw *Vladislans* their Great Duke appear in *Muscovy*.

But King *Sigismund*, as if overswayed by some secret Fatality, was so far from hearkning to their Counsels founded upon most solid Reasons of State, that he took quite contrary Measures, and in lieu of prosecuting his Victory, resolved to turn his Back to his new Acquisitions, and to exchange the fair Hopes of Gaining a vast Empire, with the vain Acclamations of his People in *Poland*, and the empty Noise of Triumph, which cost him no less than the Loss of the *Moscovian* Crown, as his

## The Antient and Present State

ill Conduct had lost him some Years before his Hereditary Kingdom of *Sweden*.

Having therefore feasted the whole Army for three days (to make in some measure an Attonement for the Loss of their Booty) and left a Body of Troops, under the Command of *Charles Chodkievitski*, for the Guard of *Smolensko*, he himself returned into *Poland* to receive the Flatteries of his Subjects.

At the next Meeting of the Diet of that Kingdom, he was received with all the Pomp and Ceremonies due to a Conquerour: The Estates were not sparing in their Addresses and Congratulations, many Speeches were made in the Assembly in Praise of the King who had added so great a Province to the Commonwealth, made himself Master of the Imperial City of the *Muscovian* Empire, and got their Great Duke *Zuski* in his Custody.

*Basili Zuski led in Triumph.*

*Sigismund* himself was so intoxicated with these imaginary Honours, that he caused *Zolkievitzki*, who first took Possession of the City of *Musco*, to make his solemn Entry in Triumph, being attended by a most numerous and magnificent Cavalcade, and followed by the Great Duke *Basili Zuski*, who with his two Brothers, was seated in an open Chariot, and thus like Captives led to the Senate-House, where being admitted, *Zolkievitzki* presented these Captive Princes to the King and Assembly, and having in a very lofty Harangue extolled the Fortune of the Commonwealth of *Poland*, in having got these Illustrious Persons into their Possession, by whose Misfortune they had opened themselves the Way into the *Russian* Empire, and to the Throne it self by the Election of Prince *Vladislav* Great Duke of *Muscovy*. He did not want Vanity to compare the Captivity of these Princes to the greatest Exploits of the most renowned Heroes of Antiquity; tho' it was sufficiently known that they were fallen into his Hands, more by the Treachery of the *Muscovites* than the Bravery of the *Poles*, who, whilst they trifled away their time in Complementing and Flattering themselves, let slip the best

best and most favourable Opportunity in the World, to make themselves real Masters of that Empire which they had swallowed up in their imaginary Panegytricks. *Zuski* and his two Brothers were by the King's Order sent Prisoners to *Goston* Castle, where they were treated according to their Quality,

But *Basili Zuski* did not long survive the Loss of his Empire and Liberty, the Weight of his Sorrows having, as it is believed, deprived him of his Life soon after; He was some time after followed by one of his Brothers, who also died for Grief; They were both privately buried betwixt *Warsaw* and *Thorn*, where their Ashes rested till the End of the War betwixt these two Crowns, when they were translated into *Muscovy*, and interred among their Ancestors.

This *Basili Zuski*, Great Duke of *Muscovy*, ended *He dies in* his Life in Captivity, in a Foreign Country, after a Poland. short and troublesome Reign. He was a Person of a more than ordinary Capacity and Merit, which had raised him to the highest Station in the Empire, before he mounted the Throne; which as he obtained by Fraud and Blood, so he endeavoured to settle it by the same Arts, by which he had gained it. And knowing the *Muscovites* to be a People the most unstable in the World, and soon hurried from one Extream to another, he had at last, (when he found his Affairs in a declining Condition) Recourse to Witchcraft and other violent Means, which served him for no other End than to hasten his Ruin, and to remove him from the Throne to a Prison where he ended his Days. A remarkable Instance of the perpetual Vicissitudes of Human Greatness, and the Instability of Popular Favour.

\* But it is time to return to the City of *Musco*, and to see what different Effects this Retreat of *Sigismund* out of *Muscovy* produced among the *Russians* and the *Polish* Garrison.

The



The *Muscovites* being, by the Departure of the King, delivered from what they dreaded most, to wit, his Marching to the Relief of the *Polish* Garrison in *Musco*, re-assumed new Vigour, and, by their repeated Attacks, press'd so hard upon the *Poles*, that they shut them up close within their Fortifications; and these, seeing themselves thus neglected by their Prince, and expos'd to Danger without any prospect of Relief, began to contrive Means for their own Safety, a great many among them, under pretence of want of Pay, openly demanding their Dismission.

*Gazjowski* their General did endeavour by all means possible to keep them in Obedience, flattering them with Hopes of a speedy Relief, and perceiving that his Words had not the desired Effect, he contriv'd Counterfeit Letters to be brought to him as coming from the King, out of *Poland*, fill'd with Promises of a most powerful Relief in a very short time. To take away all the Pretence from the Soldiers of demanding their Dismission for want of Pay, he caused a Statue of our Saviour's of massie Gold, valued at near fifty thousand Pounds, which stood with the Twelve Apostles in the Great Church of the Castle (the latter being melted down by the Order of *Basili Zuski*, as was mention'd before) to be divided among the Soldiery, who quickly sacrificed the same Statue to their Avarice, which they had adored but a few days before. The General having by this and some other Dividends taken out of the Treasury of the Great Dukes of *Muscovy*, (which was in his Possession) appeased and encouraged his disheartned Soldiers, he kept them in continual Exercise by frequent Sallies, from whence they seldom return'd without Advantage, they were much flush'd with this Success against the *Muscovites*.

There was a Magazine of Salt without the Fortifications of the *Poles*, which had been spared by the Flames, when the *Poles* set the City on fire. The Besiegers and the Besieged standing equally in  
need

need of this Commodity, as having no other to supply their present Occasions, this gave them constant Employment on both sides.

This Magazine was at so near a distance from the *Poles*, that it would have been no difficult Matter for them to inclose it within their Lines, but their General knowing that their own and the Enemies Waits would engage them in continual Skirmishes, did not think convenient to take away this Opportunity of keeping his Men in Action.

He made it also his Business to sow the Seeds of Discord among the *Muscovites* and *Cosacks* that served in the *Russian* Army, from whence he hoped to reap no small Benefit, if he could bring over the *Cosacks* to his Party, and at the same time contrive the Destruction of *Lepanowitz* the *Russian* General. For which purpose he caused several counterfeit Letters to be dispersed in the Provinces written in *Lepanowitz's* Name, wherein he commanded the *Muscovites* to fall upon the perfidious *Cosacks* in their Quarters, having received certain Intelligence, that they intended to side with the Young *Demetrius* at *Caluga*. The General's Name of the *Dunensian* *Cosacks* that served at that time in the *Muscovite* Army, was *Sidorus*, who formerly had been in the Interest of this Young *Demetrius* his Father. *Gazowski* was very careful to cause one of these Letters to fall into his Hands, who not in the least suspecting any Fraud in the Matter, without any further Consultation communicated it to the other principal Officers of the *Cosacks*, representing to them their common Danger, in Terms so lively and natural, as sufficiently testified his Apprehension of their imaginary Peril; Being all terrified with the imminent Danger of their approaching Ruin and Destruction, they unanimously resolved to anticipate their Fate and return it upon their Enemies; for which Reason having communicated their Design to the Soldiers, they ran all to their Arms, falling upon the *Muscovites* next to their Quarters.

*Lepano-*

*Lepanowitz*, surpriz'd at the Suddenness of the Matter, and being not in the least forewarned of the Trap laid against his Life, hastned thither with a few of his Friends to appease the Tumult by his Authority, or else to give the necessary Orders for stopping the Violences of the *Cosacks*, who no sooner saw him appear, but looking upon him as the chief Author of their imaginary Massacre, and being under-hand edged on to his Destruction by certain Emissaries sent among them for that purpose by the *Polish* General, they soon overpowered and slew him upon the place.

By this time the rest of the *Muscovian* Generals, having got what Forces they could together, marched at the Head of them to the Quarters of the *Cosacks*, who were also on their side preparing for a resolute Defence, and, if all Means fail'd, to open their Passage to the Castle, in order to join with the *Poles*; so that the projected Design of *Gazimowski*, was upon the very point of having had its desired Effect, if *Trubecowitz* (who upon the News of the Fall of *Lepanowitz*, was declared General over the *Muscovites*) seeing them so resolute in their Defence, had not desired a Parly with some of their principal Officers, which having been granted, and he being informed of the false Apprehensions of their imminent Danger, which had occasioned this Mutiny gave them such convincing Demonstrations of the Falsity of their imaginary Peril, and the most sincere Assurances of his Protection and Acknowledgment of their Services, that the Tumult was appeased without any further Bloodshed.

Neither was it long before the Artifices of *Gazimowski* were discovered and quite eluded by the Care of the new *Muscovite* General, who having caused some of the *Polish* Emissaries (who were sent into the Camp to debauch the *Cosacks*) to be seized and tortured, they confessed the whole Matter, and were put to death with the most exquisite Torments in View of their Countrymen within

within the Castle, to deterr them from the attempting any thing like it for the Future.

There having by this means an entire Reconciliation and good Correspondence been re-established betwixt the *Muscovites* and *Cosacks*, they with their joint Forces vigorously prosecuted the Siege, and pressed so hard upon the *Poles* on all sides, that they drove them out of all their Out-works, and at last possess'd themselves also of those Fortifications which they had on the other side of the River *Mosca*, for the maintaining a Communication and Correspondency with the Country, whereby being put out of all Hopes of Relief, and of receiving the Necessary Supplies of Provisions, they were reduced to great Wants. Having been forced to endure great Hardships for want of all manner of Necessaries for the Space of several Weeks, and every thing seeming to tend to a general Insurrection among the *Polish* Soldiers, they were on the fifteenth day of *August* unexpectedly delivered by a lucky Accident, or rather a Miracle.

It is to be observed that the *Poles* before they were so closely pent up by the *Muscovites*, and when they were as yet Masters of the Pass opposite to the Mid-City on the other side of the River *Mosca*, had sent several strong Parties abroad, partly, the better to husband that small Store of Provisions which were remaining in the Castle, partly to get what Booty they could in the Country, to supply their Wants within. Being especially reduced to great Straights for want of Forage, they had sent all their Boys and Servants out a foraging, which the *Muscovites* having got notice of, they took this Opportunity to attack in the mean while this Post with the utmost Vigour, which, after a brave Resistance, they made themselves Masters of, and having caused a Line to be made, with the necessary Redoubts on all the Avenues, guarded by a considerable Body of their best Troops, they thought to have now cut off all Hopes of Relief or receiving Supplies from the Belleged; as in

K

effect



## The Antient and Present State

effect they had, if their own Fears had not once more opened that Passage to the Enemy.

For scarce were these Lines perfected, when the several Parties sent abroad by the *Poles*, which all together amounted to some Thousands, being at a certain place, according to Agreement joined in one Body and met by the Foragers who were marching to the City of *Musco*, in order to their return into the Castle; but approaching the River *Mosca*, found all the Avenues leading to it, secured by the Enemy's Lines. They were at first at a stand, not knowing what to resolve upon in this present Exigency of their Affairs, most of the Soldiers that were among them tired before with the Fatigues and Hardships they had endured, being for retiring and shifting for themselves; But the Boys and other Servants that had been foraging, declaring that they would not abandon their Masters without attempting their Relief; the rest being at last overcome with Shame, resolved also to open their Passage with their Swords, and force their Way into the Castle. Pursuant to this Resolution they put their little Army in Battle-Array, and extending their Front (where they had placed all the Soldiers) as much as possibly they could, they advanced with Colours flying, Drums beating, and Trumpets sounding, in good Order, towards the Enemy's Lines. Scarce were they come within sight of the *Moscovites*, but these imagining no less than that the whole *Polish* Army was advancing to the Relief of their Countrymen, and being seiz'd by a Panick Fear, without any further delay quitted their Lines, and retired on the other side of the River *Mosca*, leaving a free Passage to the *Poles*, who entered *Catagorod*, or the Mid-City (which comprehends the Castle within its Walls) without the least Opposition, where they were received with all the Demonstrations of Joy and Praises due to their Courage.

*Gazowski* the *Polish* General having, out of what had hapned, and the Confusion he observed among the *Muscovites* in the City, soon gueſs'd at the true Reason of their sudden Retreat, and willing to improve ſo favourable an Opportunity, cauſed a ſtrong Sally to be made upon the *Muscovites*, who being ſcared with the Apprehenſions of the Approach of the whole Force of *Poland*, durſt not look the Enemy in the Face; ſo that the *Poles* recovered in a few Hours from the *Muscovites*, what had coſt them many Months before they could gain it; and during this Conſternation it would have been no difficult Matter to have chaſed them quite out of the City, if he that commanded the Sally would have pushed on his Advantage with the ſame Vigour to the laſt, as he did in the Beginning. But this Commander being at Variance with *Gazowski* the *Polish* General, but intimate Friend of *Chodkjenirski* Lieutenant-General of the *Lithuanian* Army, who was deſign'd for the Relief of the Caſtle of *Musco*, he was afraid, that if he ſhould proſecute the Victory to the utmoſt, he ſhould rob his Friend, to whom he was obliged for his Advancement, of the Honour of having delivered the City of *Musco* into the Hands of King *Sigismund*; ſo that being contented with having enlarged the *Polish* Quarters, and chaſed the *Muscovites* out of their Poſts, he returned without purſuing the Enemy, having let ſlip a fair Opportunity of ſecuring this Imperial City, and conſequently the whole Empire for King *Sigismund*, both which were not long after loſt by the King's ill Conduct, and the Jealouſies which reigned among his Generals, as we ſhall have Occaſion to relate anon. For, tho' the *Poles* huſh'd with this Succeſs, reaſſumed new Courage for a little time, yet finding the Enemy, after his firſt Conſternation was over, to attack them aſreſh with more Vigour than ever, and by degrees to drive them out of their moſt advanced Poſts, and that they had but little Hopes of any ſolid Supply out of *Poland*, which might be ſufficient to divert the

## The Antient and Present State

whole Force of *Muscovy*, they in a mutinous Manner demanded their Pay, declaring that they would no longer expose themselves to such Hazards, without the least Hopes of Relief or Reward. *Gazionski* endeavouring by all means possible to appease the Tumult, (which was fomented by the Divisions among the Chief Officers) it was agreed that Letters should be once more dispatched into *Poland* by a trusty Messenger, after whose Return they should be at Liberty to dispose of themselves as they found it most convenient to the present Circumstances of their Affairs.

Accordingly a Letter was sent to King *Sigismund*, written in the Name of the *Polish* Garrison of the Castle of *Musco*; wherein having represented to the King, how faithfully they had served him in their Station, how they had held out for a considerable time against the whole Force of *Muscovy*, struggled with Famine and all other Inconveniences, which must be the necessary Consequences of so long a Siege, they found themselves and their Services neglected, by not receiving any Supplies of Men or Money, that their Condition was such as not to be able to defend themselves much longer against so numerous an Army; if not powerfully assisted by the King; That therefore they were obliged to consult their own Safety; and to declare, that if by the sixth of *January* next ensuing, their Prince *Vladislaus* were not sent to their Assistance with a considerable Body of Troops, and all other things requisite to enable him to maintain his just Claim (by Virtue of the last Election) to the *Muscovian* Crown, they were unanimously resolv'd to quit the Castle, to march back into *Poland*, and to require their Arrears.

King *Sigismund* being not a little startled at the peremptory Demands of the Soldiery in *Musco*, was uncertain what Measures to take, to maintain his Interest in the *Russian* Empire; but remaining stedfast in his Resolution not to send his Son *Vladislaus*, he order'd *Charles Chodkievitski*, Lieutenant-General

General of the *Lithuanian* Army, to march with some Thousands of his best Troops towards the City of *Musco*, and to maintain the Castle against the *Muscovites*, till he having settled his Affairs at Home, should be at Leisure to march the next Spring to their Assistance with a Royal Army.

*Potocki*, Palatine of *Braclov*, was at that time Commander in Chief over those Forces that were left for the Guard of the Province and City of *Smolensko*, who had signaliz'd himself upon several Occasions at the Siege of that Place, and being an intimate Friend of *Gaziowski* the *Polish* General within the Castle of *Musco*, look'd with a very ill Eye upon this Advancement of *Chodkievitski*, which he thought to have been due to himself, or at least to his Friend *Gaziowski*; and therefore resolv'd to thwart all his Designs. For which purpose it was insinuated into the Chief Officers, That *Chodkievitski* was sent with an Army out of *Poland* to prosecute the *Muscovian* War, and to take Possession of the Imperial City, to the gaining of which he had contributed little or nothing, to defraud them of the Honour and Rewards of their past Labours; The common Souldiers being also terrified with his Severity in Martial Discipline, by the Artifices of *Potocki's* Emissaries, were prepossess'd with such an Aversion against his Person, that at his Arrival they refused to obey his Commands, neither would they be prevailed upon to make any more Sallies, which the *Muscovites* improving to their Advantage, straightned them more and more without any considerable Opposition.

The time was thus trifled away in Contests within the Castle till the sixth of *January*, the Day prefix'd for the Departure of the Garrison, in their Letter to King *Sigismund*, if Prince *Uladislaus* did not come to their Relief; when they unanimously declar'd, That they would march directly into *Poland* to get Satisfaction for their Arrears.



*Chodkiewitski*, with all the Head Officers of his Party, did omit nothing which they believ'd might keep them in Obedience; they endeavour'd by Entreaties, Promises and Threats, to induce them to alter, or at least to deferr their Resolution, but in vain; For having chosen one *Joseph Cieclinski* their General, they march'd, to the Number of betwixt seven and eight thousand Men, most Horse, out of the Castle, and having opened their Passage with their Swords thorow their Enemies, directed their March to the Lesser *Poland*, where having distributed their Troops into several Palatinates, they made *Leopolis* their Head Quarters, and seiz'd not only upon the King's Domains, but also upon the Ecclesiastical Revenues for the Satisfaction of their Arrears. There was however a Body of four thousand Men, to wit, that commanded by *Sapiha*, left for the Guard of the Castle of *Musco*, who were at last prevail'd upon to stay for some time longer, by the prospect of great Advantages, having all the Crown-Jewels of *Muscovy*, consisting of two Crowns of Gold beset with Gems, two Sceptres with Diamonds, two Ducal Bonnets, the Golden Apple, and other precious Stones of great Value, put into their Hands as a Pledge for their Pay.

*Potocki* having thus far succeeded in his Design, and finding things reduc'd to Extremity by his Contrivances, he thought it now fit time to step in for the Preservation of the Place; for which purpose he sent a considerable Force from *Smolensko*, under the Command of *Konickpotski* a Creature of his own, and not long after, his near Kinsman *Nicholas Strusius*, with part of the Garrison of *Smolensko*, to the Assistance of those within the Castle of *Musco*. They entred without the least Opposition, thro' that Pass which the *Poles* had as yet maintain'd on the other side of the River *Mosca*; and those within being reinforc'd and encourag'd by so considerable a Number of fresh Troops, might without all doubt not only have maintain'd  
but

but also have enlarg'd their Quarters, if the Jealousie and Envy that reign'd among the Officers had not rendred all the Designs of *Chodkiewitzki* fruitless; so that, notwithstanding the considerable Accession of these Troops, the *Muscovites* found Means to pen them up closer every day, and at last to cut off their Communication with the Country, by perfecting their Lines on the other side of the River *Mosca*.

The *Sapiban* Horse, consisting of four thousand Men, seeing themselves in danger of being enclosed without any Hopes of Relief, and unwilling to lose the Treasure they had got so lately in their possession, declared unanimously, that they were resolved not to endure any longer the Dangers and Fatigues of a close Siege, without the least Prospect of Success on their side; and that they would follow the Example of the rest, who were some months before marched into *Poland*. Accordingly having chosen one *John Zalinski* their Commander in Chief, they march'd out with all the Crown-Jewels in their Possession, and having with great Bravery forced the Enemy's Lines, march'd directly into *Lithuania*, setting up their Head Quarters at *Bresla*, and treading the Footsteps of their Brethren in the Lesser *Poland*, took up their Quarters in the neighbouring Palatinates, where they liv'd at discretion upon the King's Domains and the Ecclesiastical Revenues, till their Arrears were paid.

King *Sigismund* was by this time become sensible of his fatal Error in not sending his Son *Vladislans* into *Muscovy*; especially when the *Polish* Nobility exasperated by the Insolencies of the confederate Forces in the Lesser *Poland* and *Lithuania*, began to break out into open Complaints, charging the King with the Causes of all these Disorders, which might have been prevented if he had not preferred the Insinuations of his flattering Courtiers before the wholesom Advice of his Senate and his most experienced Officers. To repair therefore, if possible, his former Mistake, he resolv'd to bring *Vladislans* under in Person at the Head of a good Army, and

having assembled what Forces he had in Readiness, *Sigismund* march'd directly to *Vilna* the Capital City of *Lithuania*, expecting to be join'd there by the Confederate Forces, by reason of their great Zeal for the Relief of *Musco*. Interest of their Prince *Uladislaws*. But these having once tasted the Sweets of their penitiful Quarters, and having yet in fresh Remembrance their late Fatigues sustain'd in the Castle of *Musco*, were not for changing their present plentiful Condition for the Toil and Chances of War; so that, when the King order'd them to prepare for the March, they unanimously declar'd that they would not stir unless they receiv'd full Satisfaction for their Arrears.

The King, tho' disappointed in the Assistance of those Troops, in which he confided most, having receiv'd a Reinforcement of two thousand *German* Foot, directed his March towards *Smolensko*, where by the Accession of those Forces that Quarter'd thereabouts, he hop'd to be in a Condition to attempt the Relief of his Subjects within the Castle of the City of *Musco*. But the same Evil Genius which had alienated the Confederate Forces from his Service did follow him to *Smolensko*. For the Horse in those Parts, after the Example of their Brethren in *Lithuania* and *Poland*, declar'd that they would not stir out of their Quarters till their Arrears were paid them. King *Sigismund* wanting Money to satisfy their Demands, and Strength to reduce them to Obedience, was fain to have Recourse to Entreaties and Promises not only of their Arrears, but also of vast Rewards; but these verbal Temptations not making the least Impression upon the Souldiers, the King declar'd that if they all refus'd to follow him, he would in Person at the Head of his Guards only march to the Relief of his Subjects in *Muscovy*.

Some of the Horse, overcome with Shame and the Perswasions of their Officers, who upbraided them with Cowardice and want of Loyalty, being at last prevail'd upon, not to leave the King

at

at this critical Juncture, *Sigismund* resolv'd to prosecute his March to *Viasna*, mid-way betwixt *Smolensko* and the City of *Musco*.

I had almost forgot to have mention'd here an Accident that hapned to the King at the time of his marching out of one of the Gates of *Smolensko*, which is call'd the *Kings Gate*, the same was interpreted as an inauspicious Omen to *Sigismund*. For it hapned, that just at the same Instant as he was to go thro' the abovemention'd Gate, the Portcullice fell down and stopp'd his Passage; so that he was forced to turn back and take another Way to *Viasna*, where he halted, expecting to be join'd by some other Forces, that were quarter'd in the neighbouring Provinces.

Whilst the King, who was always dilatory in his Affairs, was advancing with slow Marches towards the City of *Musco*, the *Russians* had press'd on the Siege of the Castle with more Vigour than before, and having perfected their Lines on all sides, and fortified them with Redoubts at convenient distances, and reduc'd the *Poles* within to great Straights, who, for want of a sufficient Number of Foot, were no longer able to maintain their Works, much less to hinder the Approaches of the Enemy. However, they supplied the Defect of their Foot by the Service of their Horse, who during the whole Summer, notwithstanding all the Passages were fortified and guarded by the *Muscovites*, at several times broke thro' their Lines and brought in Provisions for the Garrison. But these Supplies being brought in so small Quantities as not to bear any proportion with the Necessities of the Soldiers, who were at last reduced to extream Want, *Chodkievitski* resolv'd to make his last Effort, and to try whether he could not by the same Way of the River, which he had made use of before, bring in a Supply of five hundred Waggons, laden with all manner of Provisions into the Castle.



For which purpose having order'd a Sally to be made with the greatest part of the Horse, and all the Foot within the Castle, they by break of day forced the Guards of the *Muscovites* on the other side of the River *Mosca*, to facilitate the Passage of their Convoy, which they met at some distance from the Town. But they advancing very slowly by reason of the great Number of Waggon, the *Muscovites* had sufficient Leisure given them to draw the greatest part of their Forces out on that side, so that at their Return they were warmly received by the whole Power of the *Muscovites*, who knowing the Fate of the Siege to depend from the Success of this days Action, fought with great Obstinacy. The *Polish* Horse, induced by the same Motives fought like Men resolved to conquer or to dy, and, notwithstanding the great Inequality of their Number, had brought the *Muscovian* Horse into Confusion, and would in all likelihood have carried the Day, if they had been duly seconded by their Foot commanded by *Sirrusius*. But he being a near Kinsman and Creature of *Potocki*, who, as we mentioned before, look'd with an ill Eye upon the Advancement of *Chodkievitski*, under pretence of guarding the Convoy of Provisions, advanced so slowly to the Rescue of the Horse, that being surrounded on all sides, they had enough to do to fight their Way thro' into the Castle, without being able to execute their Design, and were soon after followed by the Foot, who were forced to leave all the Provisions intended for their Relief to the disposal of the Enemy.

Poles beaten by the Muscovites.

Thus the Hopes which King *Sigismund* had conceived of the conquering of the *Russian* Empire vanished with his Overthrow, which at once lost him all the Fruits of his former Victories, acquired with the Effusion of so much Blood, and the Expence of a vast Treasure.

For the *Muscovites* having received certain Intelligence that King *Sigismund* was preparing to advance to their Rescue, doubled their Guard in all their

their Avenues leading to the Castle, and so straightly enclos'd the Garrison within the Limits of their Walls, that they took from them all Hopes of receiving any further Supplies of Provisions. The *Poles* on the other Hand knowing the Importance of the Place which was committed to their Custody, from whence depended in a great Measure the Fate of the *Muscovian* Empire; and living in dayly Expectation of the Approach of their King, endured all the Extremities of Famine with an unparallell'd Resolution. For after having consumed every thing that was eatable, not only Horses, Cats, Dogs, Rats, Mice, and other living Creatures, but also the Leather and Coverts of their Trunks and Saddles; they proceeded to Human Flesh, feeding upon the Carcasses of their Comrades. But this having in a little time caused a most violent Contagion among them, and receiving no certain Intelligence of the further Approach of the *Polish* Army, their Obstinacy was forced to yield to the Extremity to which they were reduced by the Watchfulness of the *Muscovites*, and the slow Advances of their Countrymen, so that they surrender'd themselves at Discretion, after having given a thousand evident Proofs of their Courage and Loyalty during this long and remarkable Siege.

King *Sigismund* had been all this while trifling away his time at *Viasna*, where having received this fatal News of the Surrender of the Castle of *Musco*, he and the whole Army were put into such a Consternation as is not easie to be express'd. Being at the greatest Incertitude that possibly could be, what to resolve upon at this critical Juncture, he called together all his ablest Counsellours and most experienced Officers, to consult what was best to be done. There were not a few who advis'd him to lay aside all further Thoughts of the *Muscovian* Crown, and in a far advanced Season, not to expose his Person and the whole Army to eminent Danger among a Treacherous People. But the major Part were of Opinion, that the Pretences to the

The Poles  
surrender  
the Castle  
of Musco.

## The Antient and Present State

the *Russian* Empire ought not to be quited at so easie a Rate; that if he, without any further Delay, advanced into the Heart of the Country, it was not improbable that the *Muscovites* over-awed by his Presence at the Head of a good Army, whilst their Affairs were yet in an unsettled Condition, might be induced rather to adhere to their former Election of Prince *Vladislaws*, than to expose themselves afresh to the Hazards of a ruinous War. And that in case they should be disappointed in their Expectation, it would be more glorious for them to procure an honourable Peace with their Swords in Hand, than shamefully to turn their Backs to their Enemies, whereby they would be encouraged to carry the War into the *Polish* Territories.

The King having given his Approbation to the latter, it was resolved to march immediately towards *Federoviscum*, where having set up their Head Quarters, the King detached a considerable Body of Horse, to advance to the very Walls of the City of *Musco*. They were no sooner come within sight of that City, but they were received with good store of Shot from the Walls, which being seconded by a furious Sally, the *Polish* Horse were forced to retire with the Loss of some of their Companions. The King judging by the Entertainment given to his Troops before the Imperial City that the *Muscovites* had laid aside all Thoughts of receiving his Son *Vladislaws* for their Great Duke, and finding himself not in a Capacity at present to force them to a Compliance, was uncertain what Measures to take. The worst of all was, that the *Muscovites* in the circumjacent Provinces, upon the first News of the Surrender of the Castle of *Musco*, and the Approach of the *Polish* Army, had carried all their Provisions into their strong Holds; so that King *Sigismund's* Army which consisted most of Cavalry, was in great Distress for want of Forage in a Country where the Winter-Season affords nothing in the Field for the Sustainance of Horses, and makes encamping almost intolerable to the Soldiers.

The

The evil Posture of their Affairs gave occasion to frequent Consultations in the *Polish* Camp, where it was at last resolved to attempt to make themselves Masters of some Place of Strength, whereby they might at once supply their present Necessity, and secure themselves a secure Retreat in the Heart of the Country, till they might find an Opportunity to take new Measures against next Spring. *Volock* was the Place pitch'd upon as the fittest for their present Purpose, which the *Poles*, enraged at their ill Success, attacked with incredible Fury, but their ill Fortune seem'd to follow them wherever they came; for the *Muscovites* having in fresh Remembrance the Ravages committed by the *Poles*, and especially the Burning of the City of *Musco*, look'd upon them no otherwise than the mortal Enemies of their Country, and therefore defended themselves with such a Resolution as sufficiently shewed that they would rather bury themselves in the Ruins of the Place than suffer them again to get footing in the Heart of the Empire; so that after having been repulsed several times with considerable Loss, they had no other Way left them for their Safety, than to hasten their March towards *Smolensko*, and from thence into *Poland*, with the Loss of many of their Souldiers and most of their Horses.

And thus, after so much Blood-shed, so many Sieges and Battles, and the Expence of vast Treasures, ended the Expedition of *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, who by his ill Conduct lost the Crown of *Muscovy* designed for his Son *Vladislaus*, rendred the Endeavours of the two unfortunate *Demetrius's* unsuccessful, and involved the *Russian* Empire in unspeakable Miseries, which now by his Retreat began to conceive new Hopes of its future Establishment.

For, no sooner had they rid their Hands of the *Poles*, but they applied all their care towards the rooting out the Remnants of the Imposture of the *Demetrius* for which purpose they sent a considerable Body towards

The Poles  
retire out  
of Musco-



## The Antient and Present State

wards *Caluga*, to attack those Forces that stood still out for the Interest of *Marina* and the Young *Demetrius*, her pretended Son, under the Command of *Zarucki* the General of the *Cosacks*; but these defended themselves with so much Bravery; that the *Muscovites* finding them so resolute in their Defence, and fearing lest they should be prevail'd upon to side with the *Poles* against them, tampered under-hand with some of their Chief Officers, who being blinded by the *Muscovite* Gold, brought over the greatest part of the *Cosacks* to the *Muscovite* Party, and as a Pledge of their future Fidelity, delivered their Leader, the brave *Zarucki*, and *Marina* and her supposititious Son into their Hands.

The Unfortunate *Zarucki*, after an Imprisonment of some Months, was impaled; but as to *Marina* and the Young pretended *Demetrius*, the *Muscovites* were divided in their Opinions; there being not a few who in regard of the eminent Station she had born in the *Muscovian* Empire, and her high Extraction, endeavoured to save her from the Cruelties of those who laid all the Outrages committed since the Beginning of the War by the *Poles* at her Door, as being in a great Measure the chief Cause of their Invading the *Russian* Empire, and consequently of all the Miseries they had endured for these ten or twelve Years last past. They judged it therefore most conducive to the Settlement of their State, by her Death to strike at the Root of the Pretensions of the *Demetrius's*, and to take away all Colour of future Claim upon that Score: Pursuant to which Resolution, she and her pretended Son *Demetrius* were condemned to be thrust under the Ice.

*Marina* received the fatal News with a Constancy above the ordinary Courage of her Sex, and having desired only a few Hours to prepare herself for her last Exit out of this World, she appeared with a very grave and composed Countenance, and a Presence so Majestick, and out-braving her present ill Destiny, that she drew Tears even from the Eyes of her mortal Enemies. She declared, that,

*Marina*  
and the  
Young *De-*  
*metrius*  
drownd.

as for her own part, she had of late been so much accustomed to the perpetual Vicissitudes of Fortune, as not to be terrified at her approaching Death, by which she hoped to exchange her Miseries for everlasting Joys; That her only Concern was for the young Babe, whose tender Age, as it was incapable of committing any Crimes, so her greatest Grief was to see its Innocence thus involved in her Ruin by the Insatiable Revenge of her Enemies. Being not allowed to say any more, after a few Minutes bestowed in pious Ejaculations, she was with her Babe in her Arms thrust into the Watery Element, where she and all her Hopes were smothered under the Ice.

She was a Lady of an immense Ambition, and of a Greatness of Mind uncommon to her Sex; as her aspiring Thoughts gave place to all other Considerations, to the Desire of Empire was the predominant Passion of her Soul, which had made her embark in these Designs which at last proved her Destruction. The Greatness of her Courage and Constancy was such, as that she refused even to the last to be treated at a less Rate than an Empress; And in the very lowest Ebb of Fortune, such was her Ambition as to refuse the Letters of certain Friends, because they had not stiled her Empress of *Muscovy* in their Superscriptions.

The *Muscovites* having thus disintangled themselves out of these Troubles which had overwhelmed their Empire, began now to take breath, and in order to establish their present Quiet upon a lasting Foundation, began to consult the Settlement of the Government, by such an Election as might restore them to their former flourishing Condition. There were some among the ancient Nobility, who sufficiently declared their Inclinations, that by their late Services in having been instrumental in chasing the *Poles* out of *Muscovy*, they thought themselves entitled to the Royal Dignity, which was like to have proved the Source of new Calamities, if the popular Faction headed

headed by *Profowecki* and *Boris Sicin* had not declared peremptorily, that the only Means to settle their turbulent State, was to revert the Government into its ancient Channel, by chusing one of the Royal Family of *John Basilovits*.

But whilst the *Muscovites* were concerting Measures for the Establishment of their State, thinking to have secured themselves against any further Impostures, by the Death of *Marina* and the pretended Young *Demetrius*, they were surprized with the unwelcome News, that the Old *Demetrius* was revived again, and had appear'd in the North-western Provinces of the Empire.

A fourth  
counter-  
feit De-  
metrius.

This Impostor was of a mean Extraction, a Scrivener by his Profession, but of a bold and daring Spirit, and a ready Tongue and subtle Wit; He assum'd the Name of *Demetrius* the Son of *John Basilovits*, giving it out that besides his miraculous Preservation at *Ugletz* and in the City of *Musco*, he had escaped the Hands of the *Tartars* at *Caluga*, who in the Fray had murdered another in his stead.

The Rumour spread abroad concerning this new *Demetrius*, soon drew to his Party such of the *Muscovites* as had lately adhered to *Marina*, and for fear of Punishment were glad to embrace any Opportunity to fish in troubled Waters. To these there flocked abundance of Vagabonds and idle Persons, the Remnants of the late intestine Broils, and such as having been by the War indisposed to any thing of Labour, hoped to live upon Rapine and the Plunder of the Country.

Finding himself thus on a sudden at the Head of a considerable Party, he publish'd his Manifesto, wherein he exhorted all his faithful Subjects to acknowledge him for their lawful Sovereign, as being the only surviving Issue of *John Basilovits*, their Great Duke, who having three several times escaped the Hands of his bloody Enemies did once more appear to assert his Legal Title to the *Muscovian* Throne.

Per-

Perceiving the giddy Multitude ready to swallow the Bait, he directed his March to *Novogorod Veliki*, where being received under the Acclamations of the People, he after some short Stay, march'd from thence to *Jama*, and so further to *Ivanogorod*, where the Inhabitants, after the Example of those of *Novogorod*, readily opened their Gates, and received him as Great Duke of *Muscovy*. Being encouraged by this Success, to put the better Countenance upon his Imposture, he resolved to strengthen his Interest, if possible by some Foreign Alliances. He judged, not without reason, that the *Poles*, who had been so lately baffled in their Design against *Muscovy* at the Expence of a vast Treasure, and the Loss of so many of their Countrymen, would not easily be prevailed upon to try so soon again their Fortune in a Country where they had drawn upon themselves the general hatred of the People; wherefore he thought it more conducing to the present Circumstances of his Affairs, to implore the Assistance of the *Swedes*, who by Reason of the nearness of their Frontiers to those Provinces where he had established his Interest, were the most likely to prove most advantageous to his Pretensions.

In order to which, he sent an Ambassador to *Charles King of Sweden*, unto whom having represented the Treachery of his unfaithful Subjects against their Lawful Sovereign, he craved his Aid for the Recovery of his Throne. King *Charles* shewed sufficient Inclination to hearken to his Propositions, but considering with himself how it could be possible that the same *Demetrius*, after having been slain three several times, should appear again and ask his Assistance unless he were immortal, he dispatched the Ambassador of this New *Demetrius* with this Answer, That he would send an Ambassador of his own to *Ivanogorod*, in order to settle every thing, relating to the proposed Alliance, with him in Person. King *Charles* had at that time in his Court, a certain Gentleman whose Name was *Petrus*, who had formerly seen the first *Demetrius*;

L

both

Several  
Places de-  
clared for  
him.

Sends an  
Ambassa-  
dor into  
Sweden:



## The Antient and Present State

both in *Poland* and in the City of *Musco*. Knowing him to be a Person of undoubted Integrity, and being resolved not to be imposed upon by the cunning *Miscovite*, he sent him as his Ambassador to this *Demetrius*, then resident at *Ivanogorod*, with Orders, if he found him to be the same Person that was acknowledged and crowned as the true *Demetrius* in the City of *Musco*, to conclude an Alliance with him, and to promise him all possible Assistance for the Recovery of his Crown and the reducing his Subjects to their due Obedience. *Petreius*, being arrived at *Ivanogorod*, demanded, according to his Instructions, immediately Audience from the supposed Great Duke, which he could not obtain at that time by reason of a Pretended Indisposition of this new modell'd Emperour of *Russia*, who having got Notice that *Petreius* had personally known the first *Demetrius*, did not judge it advisable to admit him into his Presence. *Petreius* having again demanded Audience, was answered, That the Great Duke's Indisposition would not give him leave to receive him in Person, according to his Quality, but that if he would be pleased to treat with his Council in the mean while, concerning such Matters as were within the Compass of his Instructions, he did not question but that in a few Days he might be so far re-establish'd in his Health, as to ratifie the Treaty in Person, and to shew him all the Honours due to his Character. *Petreius*, who began to mistrust the Matter, answered, That the King of *Sweden*, his Master, being desirous to enter into a strict Alliance with his *Czarish* Majesty, had given him some particular Instructions, which he was commanded to communicate to no body but to him in Person; And having made reiterated Instances for his Admittance into the Great Duke's Presence, which was as often denied him, under some pretence or other, he had all the Reason to gather from thence and some other Observations he made, that this Denial proceeded from the Conscience of his own Guilt, and that

that all his Pretences were fictitious; Wherefore having once more demanded Audience, which was again denied, he declared, That since it was his Misfortune to come at a time when it was not consistent with his *Czarish* Majesty's Health to be admitted in his Presence, and that being limited as to the time of his Return, and not permitted to disclose his Master's Secrets to any of his Ministers, he was obliged to return into *Sweden*; But that, if the Great Duke would send once more his Ambassadors to the King his Master, he did not question but that Matters might be adjusted betwixt them to their mutual Satisfaction. Thus *Petreius* cunningly dissembling his real Thoughts concerning these frequent Delays and Denials put upon him by the *Russians*, left *Ivanogorod*, and at his Return gave King *Charles* a full Account of the Success of his Negotiation.

The new modell'd *Demetrius* finding himself thus disappointed in his Hopes of the *Swedish* Aids, yet did not lose Courage; but having by this time brought over a considerable Body of the *Cossacks* to his Party, resolved to appear now in the Field at the Head of his Army directing his March to the City of *Plesko*, situate upon a Lake of the same Name, and one of the most considerable in those Parts.

The *Muscovites*, who look'd at first upon this Imposture, as so gross and so ill contrived as scarce worth their taking Notice of, when they saw several Places of Note thereabouts to take the Bait, and the Impostor ready to take the Field with a considerable Number of Troops, thought it now high time to run to the quenching of the Fire before the Flame should spread it self over the neighbouring Provinces. Having receiv'd Intelligence that the Impostor was marching towards *Plesko*, they ordered their Army to march also to the Relief of that Place; which being by the Counterfeit *Demetrius* summoned to a Surrender, was just upon the point of complying with his Demands,

## The Antient and Present State

Is routed.

when the *Muscovite* Army advancing, he took the Alarm, and finding himself not in a Capacity to fight an Army much superiour to him both in Number and Goodness of the Soldiers, he resolved upon a hasty Retreat, which was done with so much Precipitation, that he was forced to leave all his Cannon and Baggage behind him, which fell into the Hands of the Enemies, who also pursued and dispersed his Troops, himself scarce escaping to *Ivanogorod*.

Is invited  
to Plesko.

The *Muscovites*, believing there was nothing more to be done for them in those Parts, marched back with their Army to the Capital City; but it was not long after they had withdrawn themselves out of the Neighbourhood of *Plesko*, when the Inhabitants of that City sent their Deputies to *Ivanogorod* offering themselves and their Town to the Service and Protection of this Impostor.

He, who but a few days before had looked upon his Affairs as desperate and past redress, being overjoyed at so unexpected a Success, re-assumed new Courage, and being resolved to improve so favourable an Opportunity to his Advantage, went immediately with what Troops he had left after his late Retreat to *Plesko*, where he was received with all the Demonstrations of Joy, and Honour due to their Lawful Sovereign.

If he had been as careful to maintain the good Opinion of the Citizens of *Plesko*, as he had been vigilant in procuring it, the Accession of so considerable a Place might have proved of great Consequence to his Affairs; but, instead of improving it to his Advantage, he gave himself over to all manner of Debauchery and Licentiousness, and his Officers, following the Footsteps of their Leader, committed all manner of Insolencies upon the People, by debauching and violating their Wives and Daughters; so that at last the Citizens of *Plesko*, being convinced of their Mistake, and not any longer able to endure their Villanies, took a Resolution to rid their Hands of these new Guests.

For

For which purpose being met at a certain Day appointed for that purpose early in the Morning well armed, they attacked and beat his Guards, and forced him to fly the City. The *Cosacks* seeing him thus forsaken by the *Muscovites*, resolved not to stay long behind, but to leave him with the first Opportunity. But some of the Officers considering with themselves, that if they could seize upon his Person, they might, by so acceptable a Present the sooner make their own Peace, and obtain Pardon for their Rebellion, resolved to seize him and to deliver him up to the *Muscovites*. They were just upon the point of putting their Design in Execution, when he mistrusting the Matter, clapp'd Spurs to his Horse, and would without Question have saved himself by the Swiftmess of his Horse, if he had not been overtaken by an Arrow out of a *Cosacks* Bow, which having wounded him in the Shoulder, he was taken, and being bound Hand and Foot, sent to the City of *Musco*, where he was hang'd in a Chain before one of the Gates of that City. Is taken  
and executed.

The *Muscovites* in the mean while having consulted their own Safety after some Contests among the Nobles, at last, by the universal Suffrage of the People, chose *Michael Federovits*, the fatal Youth so much feared by *Zuski*, their Great Duke, who happily maintained himself in the Throne, and restored Tranquility to the Shatter'd Empire of *Muscovy*, as will appear out of the following Chapter.



## C H A P. IV.

*Containing the History of the Reigns of Michael Federovits, of Alexi Michaelovits, his Son, and Fedor Alexiovits the Eldest Brother of the present Grand Czar of Muscovy.*

**M**ichael Federovits was the Son of Fedor Nikita, who being descended from the Race of the Great Duke John Basilovits, by one of his Daughters, had during the last Troubles in Muscovy lived a very retired life; And at last having forsaken his Wife for God's sake, as they call it in Muscovy, embraced a Religious Life, and soon after was made Patriarch, when he changed the Name of Fedor into Philkretes. His Son was scarce seventeen years of Age when he was crown'd Great Duke of Russia, in the Year 1613, with one of the Diadems which they found among the Rapines of the Poles, notwithstanding which he governed the Russian Empire with a great deal of Prudence, taking the Advice of his ablest Counsellors, but especially of his Father in all Matters of any Moment.

Truce begun between the new Great Duke and the Poles.

The first thing he did, after his Coronation, was to recompence the Services of *Proszowski*, *Boris Siciński*, and the General of the *Dunensian Cossacks*, who had not only signaliz'd themselves by their Zeal in driving the Poles out of Muscovy, but also had been very instrumental in his Election. Those he constituted Generals of his Armies, and by their Valour obliged the Poles to emancipate them from the Oath which the *Muscovites* had sworn to *Uladislaus* their Prince, who was forced to make a Truce with this new Great

Great Duke for fourteen Years, yet under these Conditions, That the *Poles* should keep in the mean time in their Possession the Dukedoms of *Severia*, *Zemlen*, and *Smolensko*, which they had taken during the late Troubles in *Muscovy*. He also renewed the Antient Alliances with the other neighbouring Princes; and as he was of a very good Nature, so by the Mildness of his Government he abolished the Memory of his Predecessors Cruelties; that, it is granted, the *Muscovites* never enjoyed a more peaceable and happy Government for many Ages before. His Father, for whom he had always expressed so much Respect, as not only to admit him to all Publick Audiences and Ceremonies, where he gave him Precedence, died in the Year 1633. Which had almost proved fatal to his Affairs, by the unfortunate Siege of *Smolensko*, if by a seasonable Peace he had not prevented the ill Consequences of so signal a Disgrace.

For the Truce with the *Poles* being expired some Years before, and *Michael Fedorovits*, being resolved to remove these troublesome Neighbours at some further Distance from his Frontiers, and to draw out the Thorn which stuck so close in his Flesh, meditated the Siege of *Smolensko*. For which purpose he had brought together an Army of above an Hundred thousand Men, among whom were several Thousand *Germans*, and several *Muscovian* Regiments exercised according to the *German* Discipline, and commanded by foreign Officers; and a great Train of Artillery consisting of three hundred Pieces of Cannon, and all other things requisite to carry on the Siege with the utmost Vigour, under the Command of one *Herman Shein* a *Polander*, who by his changing Religion had gained him the Affection and Favour of the New Patriarch. The Reduction of the Place seemed to be so much the easier, in that the City is encompassed with Hills and only one single Wall built after the old Fashion without any Out-works or Ditch, and that the *Polish* Garrison was not very

The new  
Great Duke  
besieges  
Smolensko.

numerous. For which Reason the Great Duke having ordered to attack it with all imaginable Vigour, the Place was closely besieged in the Year 1633.

The *Germans* soon made a large Breach in the Wall on their side, and were resolved to give the Assault, which was opposed by the General, saying, That it would be a Reproach to the whole *Muscovite* Army, that a Handful of *Germans* should carry away the Honour of the Siege; but these being encouraged by the rest of the Foreign Officers of several Nations, mounted the Breach, and were in a manner Masters of it, when they received positive Orders from the General to retreat, and that in case of Refusal he would turn his Cannon upon them: So that not daring to make any further Attempt, the whole Army continued the Siege without doing any thing worth taking Notice of.

*Uladislaus*, the New King of *Poland*, had in the mean while Leisure given him to get together a Body of Troops, and being encouraged by the Divisions among the Officers in the *Muscovite* Camp, or invited on purpose (as some will have it) by the *Muscovian* General *Herman Shein*, marched to the Relief of the Place. The City of *Smolensko* is surrounded with Hills and vast Woods, which gave sufficient Opportunity to the *Poles* to possess themselves of those few Avenues that led to the *Muscovian* Camp, and by which they received their Provisions, so as that in a little time the *Muscovites* were reduced to such Straights for want of all manner of Necessaries, that the General to prevent their being starved, was forced to capitulate with the *Poles*, to surrender the whole Army and Artillery at Discretion, which was to be ransomed by the Great Duke.

Disgrace  
received  
before  
Smolensko.

The Loss of so great an Army, put the whole Empire under a great Consternation, and things began to look with a very ill Face, especially when the People began to murmur openly, and  
some

some of the great ones were suspected to have a Finger in the Treason. King *Vladislaus* sent an Ambassador to the Great Duke immediately after this Defeat of the *Muscovites*, who by his Insolent Behaviour sufficiently exprest the Sense the *Poles* had of the present turbulent State of the *Russian* Empire. He caused the *Muscovite* Pristafs to alight and to uncover themselves first, (which they refuse to all other Nations) declaring publicly, that he was not come there to do the *Muscovites* any Honour, but to receive it from them. He refused the Great Duke's Horses at his Entrance and made use of his own. At his Audience he would needs make his Proposition Sitting, and perceiving that when he pronounced the Name and Titles of his King, the Boyars did not uncover themselves, he stopp'd till such time as he saw the Great Duke command them so to do. King *Vladislaus* had not so much as sent the usual presents to the Great Duke (without which otherwise Ambassadors are never admitted to publick Audience) the Ambassador only presented him, as from himself, with a very rich Coach, which the Great Duke having accepted of, he sent him before his Departure a rich Present of Sables, which the Ambassador refused with Scorn. The Great Duke thereupon sent back his Coach, which he was so angry at, that he kick'd the Pristaff, (who brought the Message) from the Top of a very high pair of Stairs to the Bottom.

The Great Duke being highly incensed thereat, yet was fain to dissemble his Resentment, in the present ill Posture of his Affairs, he only sent word to the Ambassador, that he knew not whether this Behaviour of his was according to his Master's Order, or whether it proceeded from his own violent Inclinations; That if he had acted according to the King's Commands, he must have Patience till a more favourable Juncture should present to give himself Satisfaction for the Affronts put upon him; That tho' by his late Disgrace before *Smolensko*



Peace be-  
tween the  
Muscovites and  
Poles,

Michael  
Federo-  
vits dies.

*lensko* he was at present not in a Capacity to shew his Resentment as he ought to do, the Event of the War was nevertheless in the Hands of God Almighty, who might crown his Arms with better Success another time; But that if what he had done was without the King's Order, (as he believ'd) and upon his own Account, Complaint should be made of it to the King his Master, from whose Justice he promised himself ample Satisfaction for the Rudeness and Insolencies committed by his Minister. *Michael Fedorovits*, seeing his Affairs in so ill a Posture, thought it most advisable to comply with the present Exigency of the State, and to clap up a Peace with the *Poles* in the next following Year, by Virtue of which the *Muscovites* renounced all their Pretensions to the two large Dukedoms of *Smolensko* and *Zernikow*. In the same Year he caused *Herman Shein*, his General at the Siege of *Smolensko*, to be executed, with his Son, and all his Kindred to be banished into *Siberia*, by whose Death the Clamours of the People having been appeased, he reigned afterwards in great Tranquility, and to the great Satisfaction of his Subjects, till the Year 1645, when Count *Wolmer*, natural Son to the late King of *Denmark*, came to this Court, to sollicite his Daughter in Marriage, which being opposed by the *Russian* Clergy, who objected, that he was an Heretick; the Count proffered that his Chaplains should maintain the Truth of the *Lutheran* Faith against them, which the *Muscovite* Priests refusing, the Grand Czar broke out into a Passion, saying to them, *Why do you impose upon us a Faith you dare not bring to Tryal?* A few days after, going very well to Bed, he was seized at Midnight with a most violent Vomiting, which put an End to his Life the next Morning being the 12th. day of *July*, in the 49th. Year of his Age, and the 33d. of his Reign, the Great Dutchess his Wife dying within eight days after him, being generally regretted by the *Muscovites*, who under his Reign enjoyed the

the Fruits of a peaceable and mild Government.

Some years before his Death, there started up another Impostor, who had Impudence enough to assume the Name and Quality of *Basilj Ivanovits* <sup>flourish up.</sup> *Basili*, Son to the Great Duke *basili Zuski*, tho' it was immediately known that the whole Race of the *Zuski* was extinct some Years before. For of the three Brothers that were carried Prisoners into Poland, two died there without leaving any Male Issue, and the third, who was released and return'd into *Muscovy*, died a few Years before the Discovery of this Impostor, without Children. There was another Lord of the same Family, who had one Son, named *Michael Basilevits Zuski Scapin*, who died Young, in the Year 1616, without Issue.

The Name of this Impostor was *Timoska* (the diminutive of *Timothy*) *Ankudina*, born in the Suburbs of *Vologda* in the Province of the same Name. He was the Son of a Linen Draper who dealt in coarse Cloaths, whose Name was *Demki Ankudina*, and his Mother was called *Salmaniska*.

The Father having observed something more than Ordinary in him, had been very careful of giving him the highest degree of *Muscovite* Education, which consists in Reading, Writing, and Singing, so that he was look'd upon in those Parts as a Person of an uncommon Capacity. The Excellency of his Voice and his Skill in Singing, had particularly recommended him to the Archbishop of the Place, who took him into his Service, wherein he behaved himself so well, that he bestowed one of his Grand-daughters upon him in Marriage.

After the Archbishop's Death, having squandred away his Wifes Fortune, he settled himself in the City of *Musco*, where by the recommendation of a Friend he had at Court, he was made one of the Receivers in the Office, that is kept there for the Licencing of Taverns and Tippling-Houses. But giving himself over to all manner of Extravagancies and

and Debaucheries he could not make up his Accounts, which fell short the first year by a considerable Sum. To repair this Breach, he had recourse to an intimate Friend of his, one of his fellow-Receivers in the same Office, called, *Basili Gregorovits Spilki*, him he told, that one of the chiefest Merchants of *Vologda*, a near Relation of his Wifes, was come to Town, and had invited him to Dinner; that he being willing to shew his Friend the highest Act of *Muscovian* Civility, intended to let him see his Wife, and that he might be able to present her in a Condition suitable to his present Statio; he intreated him to lend him his Wifes Pearls and other Jewels, which were of a considerable Value. His Friend having without the least difficulty granted his Request, lent him the Jewels, without the least Precaution, or taking any thing under his Hand for the Receipt of them; so that, when he demanded his Jewels, *Timoska* averr'd that he had not lent him any. *Spilki* clapt him up in Prison, but having no Evidence against him, he was acquitted.

But instead of making up his Accompts with the Money he received for the Jewels, which he sold, he squandred it away upon his Extravagancies; whereupon great differences arising betwixt him and his Wife, who had a very lewd Tongue, and would frequently upbraid him with his treacherous Dealings, both to his Prince and Friend, and tearing that he might be called to an Account for his Perfidiousness, and that his Wife might be the main Instrument of his Discovery, he took a Resolution to dispatch her with the first Opportunity.

For which purpose, having sent his Son *Tereska* to a Friend of his in the Country, he shut his Wife up in a Stove, and set the House on fire, which consumed her and some of the neighbouring Houses.

Having done this he went into *Poland*, but so secretly, that it was the general Opinion in the City of *Musco*, that he had been consumed with his Family. He continued two Years under a borrow'd

Name

Burnt his  
Wife.

Retires in-  
to Poland.

Name in the City of *Warsaw*, at the Court of *Uladislaus* King of *Poland*, when hearing that a *Muscovite* Ambassador was on his Way to that Court, and not thinking himself secure, he retired to *Chmielniski* the General of the *Cosacks*, unto whom having represented, that he was a near Kinsman of the Great Duke *Basili Zuski*, and was prosecuted upon that Score by the present Czar, *Michael Fedorovits*, he begg'd his Protection, and was received with all the Respect due to his pretended Quality. As he had a ready Wit, so he carried on the Imposture under such specious Pretences, that he began to be very considerable among the *Cosacks*, who flattered themselves with his future Protection, at a time when they were very uneasie under the *Polish* Government.

The *Muscovites* had by this time got some Scent of the Matter, wherefore the Great Duke sent one of his Gentlemen Ushers, named *Jacob Koffon*, to the *Cosack* General, with an offer of his Protection against the *Poles*, and to demand the Impostor.

*Timoska* having got Notice of the Arrival of the *Muscovian* Pollanick, and guessing at his Errand, thought himself no longer safe among the *Cosacks*, who he feared would secure him for their own Advantage, and so went to *Constantinople*, where having abjur'd the Christian Religion he embraced Mahometanism and was circumcised. He proposed to the *Turks* the Introducing of *Mahometanism* in *Russia*, if by their Assistance he might be placed in the Throne of his Father the Great Duke *Basili Zuski*; but these giving no great heed to his Propositions, he did not stay long there, but took the first Opportunity to be transported by a *Venetian* Vessel into *Italy*. From *Venice* he went to *Rome*, where he professed the *Roman* Catholick Religion, and by the same Artifices that he had made use of at *Constantinople*, to wit, by promising to establish that Religion in *Muscovy*, endeavoured to bring over the Holy Father into his Interest. The Court

Goes to  
Turky,  
and turns  
Mahome-  
tan.

Comes to  
Rome and  
turns Ro-  
man Ca-  
tholick.

of



of *Rome* being by this time better acquainted with the State of *Muscovy* than they were some Years before, when they were so miserably imposed upon by *Demetrius*, and knowing that Empire is fertile of Impostors, would not act with so much precipitation in an Affair of such Moment, but resolved to amuse him with fair Promises, till they might be fully satisfied as to the Legality of his Pretensions.

Goes to Vienna, and from thence into Transylvania.

But *Timoska*, either judging these Resolutions too slow, or at least not suitable to his Purpose, went thence to *Vienna*, and from thence to Prince *Ragotzi* in *Transylvania*. This Prince furnished him with Letters of Recommendation to *Christina* Queen of *Sweden*.

Is well received by Christian Queen of Sweden.

This Prince's finding him a Person of great Dexterity, and a considerable Share of Knowledge (for he had in his Travels attained the *Latin*, *German*, *Italian*, and *Turkish* Languages) and giving credit to what he had related concerning his Quality, refused to appear in Arms for his Interest, but allow'd him a very honourable Subsistence; so that he was look'd upon by every Body and treated as the true Son of *Basili Zuzki* Great Duke of *Muscovy*.

But the Czar Regent having soon been acquainted by the *Muscovian* Merchants residing at *Stockholm*, how this Impostor was received by the Queen sent the same Postman, who had seen him before with *Chmielniski* the General of the *Cossacks*, to detect the Fraud, and at the same time to desire her to deliver this Villain into his Hands.

But *Timoska* had no sooner got Notice of the Arrival of this Gentleman, but knowing his coming to presage no good to his Affairs, got away, without taking his Leave, from his Man *Kostka* (*Constantine*) the constant Companion of his Adventures, who was carried in Chains into *Muscovy*. *Timoska* was by Order from the Queen of *Sweden* secured at *Reval* in *Livonia*, who intended to have also sent him to the great Duke; but having found Means to get out of the Prison (by

(by the Connivance of the Governour of the Place as it was believ'd) he made his Escape into *Holland*, from whence he went to *Brussels* where he tarried for some time in that Court.

From thence he went to the University of *Wittemberg*, and soon after to *Leipzig*, where he <sup>Turns Lu-</sup> made Profession of the *Lutheran* Religion, and theran. writ himself his Confession of Faith in the *Latin* Tongue.

After some Stay there he went to *Newstadt* in the Country of *Holstein*, where having been discovered by a Messenger of the Great Duke's, called *Peter Mieklaß*, he was taken by Order from the Duke of *Holstein*, who caused him to be conveyed <sup>Seized in</sup> from thence to *Gottorp*, his usual place of Residence, and to be secured under a strong Guard, till the Great Duke should send exprels Orders for the bringing his Person into *Muscovy*. Czar *Alexis Michaelovits*, Son and Successor to *Michael Federovits*, having received Notice of the Seisüre of this Impostor, not only sent his Letters to the Duke of *Holstein* <sup>Holstein.</sup> *Gottorp*, where he desired to have him delivered into the Hands of such as he had appointed for that purpose, but also (to bring to light the Villanies of *Timoska*, beyond all Contradietion) sent among his Deputies the same *Spilki*, whom formerly he had cheated of his Wife's Jewels, and who had been his Fellow-Officer in the same Employment.

*Spilki* was no sooner arrived at the Court of the Duke of *Holstein*, but he desired to be confronted with him in the Presence of some Officers of the Court, not questioning but that his Presence would soon bring him to an ingenuous Confession of the whole Truth.

But they were not a little surpris'd when they saw *Timoska* without the least Alteration in his Countenance or Behaviour, treat *Spilki* as if he had never known him before, and speak to him in the *Polish* Language, which *Spilki* did not very well understand, and being asked several Questions by him

him in relation to his past Life, especially as to his Name, whether it were not *Timoska Ankudina*, whether he had not defrauded the Great Duke's Treasury, whether he had not cheated him of his Wife's Jewels, burnt his House, and committed other enormous Crimes? *Timoska* answered carelessly, That it was possible that one *Timoska Ankudina* might have converted the Great Duke's Money to his own use, and committed many other Villanies, but that this was no Concern of his; That his Name was *Johannes Sinensis*, (which in the Polish Language signifying as much as *Zuski*, he cunningly evaded thereby what he had formerly declared of his being the Son of the Great Duke *Basli Zuski*) and that as to what he spoke of his Wife's Jewels could not have the least Relation to him, his Extraction having put him above the Rank of a poor Mechanick or Seller of Pins, alluding to the Word *Spilki*, which in the Russian Tongue signifies as much as *Pinmaker*.

He had some time before upon the Perswasion of a certain Russian Gentleman writ a Letter with his own Hand to the Patriarch of *Muscovy*, in which he had writ, That he was a *Muscovite* born, and received the Name of *Timoska* at his Baptism. That he had once (when he was at the Ottoman Court) been tempted to enter the Russian Empire with an Army of two hundred thousand *Tartars*, but that he had been diverted from this pernicious Design by the Guardian-Angel of *Muscovy*. That thereupon being resolved to lay aside all Designs against his Native Country, he had quitted *Turky* with an Intention to return into *Muscovy*; That it would else have been no difficult Matter for him to have made his Escape out of Prison if he had not stayed for the Great Duke's Command.

This Letter being look'd upon as a material Point to overcome his Obstinacy, was produced and read in his Presence, but this had no more Influence over him than the Presence of *Spilki*, whom he called a Cheat who had counterfeited the Letter to

his Destruction. To confirm which, he writ another Letter so different both in the Stile and Character from the former, that the most quick-sighted could not find the least Resemblance betwixt them.

His Highness the Duke of *Holfstein* seeing all their Endeavours of making a true Discovery of the Imposture to prove unsuccessful, ordered some of his Privy Council to examine him, and to try whether, out of his former Depositions they might not be able to convince him concerning the true State of his Affairs. They asked him, For what Reason he was prosecuted by the Great Duke; what could be the Reason of his having conceived so particular a Prejudice against his Person? What House and Family he was descended of? And whether he were of any Kin to the Great Duke? He answered, That he was no Kinsman of the Great Duke, forasmuch as his Father was a Prince born; whereas the Great Duke's Father was but a Gentleman; That he was a *Muscovite* by Extraction, but born and brought up in *Poland*; That he was Hereditary Lord of *Hukagina Severska*, in the Province of *Novogarka Severskio*, upon the Frontiers of *Muscovy*. That his Name was *Johannes Sinensis*, which in the *Polish* Language signifies as much as *Zuski*; That his Fathers Name was *Bassili Domitian Suiski*, who had received his Name from the City of *Sukh* in *Muscovy*. That he was persecuted by the Great Duke upon no other Account, that he knew of, than that of his high Extraction.

But these Depositions varying much from what he had publickly professed before, that he was Son to the Great Duke *Bassili Zuski*, and that he was born in *Poland*, with a great many other Inconsistencies, which sufficiently testified the distractions of his Conscience; he was by the Duke of *Holfstein's* Order delivered into the Hands of the Deputies of the Great Duke.



*Timoska*, finding that these Evasions would stand him no longer in stead, fell into Despair, and took a Resolution to kill himself. For which purpose, being upon his Way from *Newstadt* to *Travemund*, in order to be put on Board the Vessel that was to carry him to *Archangel* in *Muscovy*, he threw himself down headlong from the Waggon, striving to shuffe himself under the Wheels, in Hopes they would pass over his Body; But the Ground happening to be sandy and soft, his Fall did him no harm; and the Waggon being stopp'd immediately before the Wheels touch'd any part of his Body, they put him again into his Place, where they fastned and watch'd him so narrowly, that he could not find the least Opportunity of putting his Design in execution. Notwithstanding which he appeared very chearful during the whole Voyage, thinking thereby (as it was supposed) to make his Keepers the more careless, till he might find Means to be his own Executioner, and so avoid the Torments which he knew were prepared for him in *Muscovy*.

For no sooner was he arrived at *Archangel*, but he fell in so deep a Melancholy, that he appear'd quite disconsolate, and would scarce utter one Word.

1. brought  
to Musc.

1. torture'd.

From thence he was carried to *Novogorod Veliki*, and so to the City of *Musco*, where he was immediately condemned to the most exquisite Tortures. This was put in Execution in the Presence of several Boyars and other Persons of the first Rank; but they could not prevail over his Obstinacy, he refusing to give the least Answer to the Questions proposed to him. He only told them, That if they would send for Knez *Nikita Ivanovitch Romanow*, he was the only Man whom he thought worthy to receive his Confession, as knowing him to be a Person of great Honour and Courage. While two of the Boyars there present were gone to find out *Nikita*, he desired somewhat to drink; whereupon some *Quas* or small Mead was presented to him, which he refusing, they gave him some *Hydromel* in a Silver Cup, according to his Request,

Request, which in a scornful manner he only put to his Lips without tasting the Liquor.

By this time *Knez Nikita* and the other two Boyars being come in, he gave them a very civil Salute, but he still persisted in his former Depositions, that he was the real Son of *Basili Zuzki*, Great Duke of *Moscow*, tho' it were sufficiently proved against him, that he was the Son of *Demki Ankudina* a Linen Draper in the Suburbs of *Vologda*; and that the Great Duke *Basili Zuzki* had no Children, but only two Brothers who both died without any Male-Issue, one in *Poland*, the other in *Moscow* some Years before.

Whilst he endured the Tortures with an uncommon Resolution, his Mother and Son were sent for, in hopes that their Presence might be of more prevailing over his Obstinacy, than the Violence of his Tortures; They both threw themselves at his Feet, and with Tears and all the tender Expressions they were capable of, conjured him to undeceive himself and the World, and to acknowledge his Crime. The Change of his Countenance sufficiently testified the various Agitations of his Conscience, notwithstanding which, he persisted in affirming, that they were unknown to him, and took him for another than really he was; expressing in the midst of his most violent Tortures a most admirable Constancy, or rather the most resolute Obstinacy in the World; whether it was that he took a particular Pride to confirm in Strangers the high Opinion they had once conceived of his pretended Extraction, or that he was assured, that by his Confession he could not prevent his Death or obviate his Miseries, is uncertain.

Last of all, that nothing might be omitted which could in any wise contribute to overcome his Obstinacy, and induce him to an ingenuous Confession, one *John Plessow*, who had been his intimate Friend, and with whom he had left his Son before he retired into *Poland*, with several others of his Fellow-Officers at the Tavern-Office, were brought

before him; who each in their turn, endeavouring to convince him of his Error, and representing to him the Danger whetein he put his Soul, in the Condition he was in, exhorting him to pull off the Mask which he had made use of for some Years past to cheat the World, and to create new Disturbances and infinite Mileries to his Native Country; That the whole Mistry of his Impostures being revealed to the World by so many undeniable Witnesses there present, he should not rely any longer upon these vain Elusions, but consult the eternal Welfare of his Soul, and not draw any further the weight of God's Vengeance upon himself. He seemed to be moved at their Discourse, but continued so obstinate in his former Resolution that he would not speak one Word afterwards.

The next day he was again put to the Torture, which he endured with the same Resolution, nor vouchsafing to speak one Word. Being searched and found circumcised, he was immediately carried to the Great Market-place before the Castle, where Sentence was pronounced against him and put in Execution. First they cut off, with an Ax, his *Is executed.* Right Arm below the Elbow, then his Left Leg below the Knee; next, the Left Arm and Right Leg in the same manner; all which he endured with an unparalell'd Constancy, and without as much as a Groan. Last of all, the Head being severed from his Body, and the Members being set upon Stakes in the Market-place, and the Trunk left upon the Ground, the last was in the Night devoured by the Dogs, and the next morning the Executioner's Servants dragg'd the Members to the place where all the City-Dirt is thrown.

It is to be observed, that some time before a Polish Ambassador was arrived in the City of *Musca*; And the *Muscovites*, who still bore a Grudge to the *Poles* on the Account of the Miseries they had endured in their last Civil Dissentions, occasioned by the Contrivances of the several Impostors encouraged by the *Poles*, had so well timed it as to give Audience

dience to the Ambassador the same day, that *Timoska* was put to death, and to lead him in State through the Market-place, just at the very Hour of his Execution, where (under some pretence of other contrived for that purpose) they make a Halt, that he might be an Eye-Witness, and be able to give an Account in *Poland* of the tragical Exit of that Impostor, whom they had looked upon there as Son to the Great Duke *Basili Zuzki*. *Kostka*, the Servant of *Timoska*, whom we mentioned before to have been carried laden with Irons out of *Sweden* into *Muscovy*, having made an ingenuous Confession of the whole Matter, was pardoned as to his Life, and his Punishment changed into that of losing three Fingers of his Right Hand. But the Religion of the *Muscovites* obliging them to make the Sign of the Cross, with their Right Hand, this Punishment was again, by the Intercession of the Patriarch, moderated, so that the same was executed upon his Left Hand; after which he was banished into *Siberia*.

We said before, that the Great Duke *Adrichael Foderovits* died in the Year 1645. The next day being the 13<sup>th</sup> of July, the Knez and Boyars then present, resolved unanimously to hasten the Coronation of *Alexis Michaelovits*, his Son, who was then not full sixteen Years of Age. He was born in the Year 1630, on the 17<sup>th</sup> of March, and had been by his Father committed to the Care of Knez *Boris Ivanovits Morosou*, a Person of very high Extraction and extraordinary Ability. It is beyond our Scope, to relate here the Rise of the Family of the *Romanovs*, from whence the Family of the present Czar derives its Origin, one of the most Ancient in *Muscovy*, (who first assumed the Name of Czar) from whence descended *Basil* the Father of that Famous Tyrant *John Basilovits*, who reduced most of the neighbouring Princes under the Obedience of the *Russian* Empire. But the *Muscovites* relate a Story of the Father of this *Boris Ivanovits Morosou*, which may not be beyond our purpose to

Alexis Michaelovits  
Crowned.



be inserted here. It seems he was a Favorite of the Tyrant *John Basilovits*; and being a Widower presumed so much upon his Interest with the Great Duke, that he begged a certain handfom Lady, which had been the Tyrant's Mistress, for a Wife; The Great Duke granted his Request without the least Difficulty; but whether it was that he repented himself of what was done, or merely to gratifie his cruel Temper, he having got notice that the said *Morofou* and his new married Lady were at their amorous Sports one Afternoon in a withdrawing Room behind the Bath-stove, he got secretly two wild Bears, conveyed into the Room, who immediately fell upon them and devoured them both. This *Morofou* left two Sons, *Boris* and *Cheah*, who being very young, were educated by the said Tyrant; the eldest of which having improved the Advantages of his high Birth and Education above the ordinary Degree, during the intestine Commotions in the *Russian* Empire, was, as I said before, constituted by Czar *Michael Federovits* Governour over his Son *Alexis Michaelovits*, whom he used frequently to charge to follow his Advice in all Affairs of Moment. Knez *Boris Ignavits Morofou*, fearing that his Enemies might take Advantage of the Princes tender Years, had the Coronation Ceremony performed a few days after his Father's Death (who was according to the *Russian* Fashion deposited in the Church of *S. Michael*, wherein are the Sepulchres of the Great Dukes, the next Night after his Decease) which was not performed with all the usual Pomp, they wanting time to send for all those who are obliged to be present at this Solemnity. After the Coronation was over, *Morofou* changed the Quality of Governour into that of Protector, exercising, during the Princes Minority, the same Power in the disposing of his Affairs, as he had done over his Person during his Father's Life.

Knowing the young Great Duke to entertain a most profound Reverence for the Dutchess Dowager his Mother, he bestowed great Employments upon all her Kindred, whom he preferred to the best Governments in the Empire, but at such distance from Court, as made them incapable of opposing his Interest. The same Method he made use of in regard of the Antient Nobility, and such as had had the chief Administration of Affairs in the late Great Duke's Reign, whom he sent away from the Princes Person to far distant Countries. Thus he did with the *Kintz Rippine* and *Corakin*, the first of whom he constituted Governour of *Nis Novogorod*, the last of *Casim*.

Having thus removed from the Princes Person all such as he thought might any way oppose his Greatness, and filled all Places of Profit and Trust at Court with his own Kindred or Creatures, such as he knew wholly to depend on his Fortune; He used frequently to get the Young Prince out of the Capital City, under pretence of Hunting or some other Diversions, so to beget in him an Aversion to Business, whereby the whole Management of Affairs might fall to his share. But in order to an entire Establishment of his Fortune, he thought nothing more conducing to make sure of the young Princes Favour, than if he could get him to chuse a Wife out of such a Family, as being absolutely in his Interest, and where he himself might engage in an Alliance by Marriage, would engage both the Prince and Great Dutchess in his future Preservation.

The Person he pitch'd upon, was most suitable to his Purpose, was one *Ilin Danilovits Mioslanski*, of obscure Condition, raised by the Death of *Grammatine* the Chancellor of the Ambassadors Office, his Uncle by the Mothers side, whose Servant he had been formerly. This Man was looked upon with a very favourable Eye by *Moreson*, by reason of his constant Attendance on him, and his two

be inserted here. It seems he was a Favorite of the Tyrant *John Basilovits*; and being a Widower presumed so much upon his Interest with the Great Duke, that he begged a certain handsome Lady, which had been the Tyrant's Mistress, for a Wife; The Great Duke granted his Request without the least Difficulty; but whether it was that he repented himself of what was done, or merely to gratify his cruel Temper, he having got notice that the said *Morofon* and his new married Lady were at their amorous Sports one Afternoon in a withdrawing Room behind the Bath-stove, he got secretly two wild Bears, conveyed into the Room, who immediately fell upon them and devoured them both. This *Morofon* left two Sons, *Boris* and *Cheleh*, who being very young, were educated by the said Tyrant; the eldest of which having improved the Advantages of his high Birth and Education above the ordinary Degree, during the intestine Commotions in the *Russian* Empire, was, as I said before, constituted by Czar *Michael Fedorovits* Governor over his Son *Alexis Michaelovits*, whom he used frequently to charge to follow his Advice in all Affairs of Moment. Knez *Boris Ignovits Morofon*, fearing that his Enemies might take Advantage of the Princes tender Years, had the Coronation Ceremony performed a few days after his Father's Death (who was according to the *Russian* Fashion deposited in the Church of *S. Michael*, wherein are the Sepulchers of the Great Dukes, the next Night after his Decese) which was not performed with all the usual Pomp, they wanting time to send for all those who are obliged to be present at this Solemnity. After the Coronation was over, *Morofon* changed the Quality of Governor into that of Protector, exercising, during the Prince's Minority, the same Power in the disposing of his Affairs, as he had done over his Person during his Father's Life.

Knowing

Knowing the young Great Duke to entertain a most profound Reverence for the Dutchess Dowager his Mother, he bestowed great Employments upon all her Kindred, whom he preferred to the best Governments in the Empire, but at such distance from Court, as made them incapable of opposing his Interests. The same Method he made use of in regard of the Antient Nobility, and such as had had the chief Administration of Affairs in the late Great Duke's Reign, whom he sent away from the Princes Person to far distant Countries: Thus he did with the *Kintz Rippine* and *Corakin*, the first of whom he constituted Governour of *Nis Novogorod*, the last of *Casim*.

Having thus removed from the Princes Person all such as he thought might any way oppose his Greatness, and filled all Places of Profit and Trust at Court with his own Kindred or Creatures, such as he knew wholly to depend on his Fortune; He used frequently to get the Young Prince out of the Capital City, under pretence of Hunting or some other Diversions, so to beget in him an Aversion to Business, whereby the whole Management of Affairs might fall to his share. But in order to an entire Establishment of his Fortune, he thought nothing more conducing to make sure of the young Princes Favour, than if he could get him to chuse a Wife out of such a Family, as being absolutely in his Interest, and where he himself might engage in an Alliance by Marriage, would engage both the Prince and Great Dutchess in his future Preservation.

The Person he pitch'd upon, was most suitable to his Purpose, was one *Ilin Danilovits Mioslawski*, of obscure Condition, raised by the Death of *Grammatine* the Chancellor of the Ambassadors Office, his Uncle by the Mothers side, whose Servant he had been formerly. This Man was looked upon with a very favourable Eye by *Morofon*, by reason of his constant Attendance on him, and his two



beautiful Daughters, one of which he designed for the Great Duke, the other for himself.

Whilst this Favourite was thus employing all his Cunning to establish his Fortune in the near Alliance with his Sovereign, he was upon the Point of having been frustrated in his Hopes, if by his Dexterity, he had not extricated himself out of that Difficulty, which was likely to have rendered his Design abortive. For a certain young Lady, who was exceedingly beautiful, having been brought before the young Great Duke without his Knowledge, the Czar was seized in an instant with so violent a Passion for her, that he presented her with a Handkerchief and Ring, the usual Present the Czars of *Muscovy* make to such Ladies as they chuse for their Spouses. She was to appear again in Royal Dress in a few days after, when according to Custom, the young Great Duke was to tye the Crown upon her Head. But *Morofou* having been by this time sufficiently informed of what had passed, tho' managed with great Secrecy, had laid the Plot with the Attire-Women, that they should tye up her Hair so hard as to put her in a Swoon, which succeeded according to Expectation; For, whilst she was in the Great Duke's Presence, and they were busied in tying the Crown about her Head, she fell into a Swoon, which was presently by those that were present and most of them Creatures of *Boris Morofou*, construed an Apoplectick Fit; So that the poor old Gentleman, her Father, who believed himself just upon the Point of being exalted to one of the most eminent Stations in the Empire, by the Alliance with his Sovereign, saw himself not only unexpectedly deceived in his Hopes, but being besides accused of High Treason, in pretending to put his Daughter, labouring under such a Distemper, into the Arms of the Great Duke, was forced to undergo the Strapado, and was banished into *Siberia*, where he no sooner arrived, but he died with Grief, leaving his Family in Disgrace. The Maid remained a Virgin ever after till her Death,

Death, and was never known to have had any fit since; and the Emperour, being conscious of the Wrong done to her and her Father, allowed her a large yearly Pension, which made her to be courted by many of the Nobility, whom she all refused, and kept the Handkerchief and Ring, as Pledges of the Injury done to her Family.

But to return to *Morofon*, who having weathered this Point, and relying upon the Fidelity of *Ilia Danilovits Miloslauski*, he took the first favourable Opportunity to speak to the Great Duke concerning him, and thence to extoll the Beauty and Deserts of the two Gentlewomen his Daughters. These Commendations having raised in the Great Duke a desire to see them, he sent to them under pretence of a Visit to be made to the Princesses his Sisters; where, having taken a full View of them both, he became instantly so enamoured with the Beauty of the Eldest, whose Name was *Mary*, that he dispatched one immediately to her Father to bring him the welcome News that the Czar intended to honour him with his Alliance, and to marry his eldest Daughter.

It is easily imagined, that as *Miloslauski* was not altogether unprepared for it, so he received the Message with the most profound Respect, and without being in the least discomposed, returning his most humble Thanks to his Czarish Majesty for the Honour he intended to do his Family. Some days after the Great Duke sent Presents of a very great Value to his Bride, and having been informed concerning the Circumstances of *Miloslauski*, which being such as that he and his Family could not appear at the Wedding without a present Supply, he order'd them a considerable Sum of Money to put them in an Equipage suitable to their Present Condition. The Marriage Ceremony was performed in the beginning of the Year 1647, but very privately for fear of Witchcraft, a thing much dreaded among Persons of Quality in *Miscovy*, especially at their Weddings. The Czarissa was a very beautiful  
 Lady,

Lady, besides which, her Modest and Religious Behaviour, and many Charitable Actions, made her afterwards the Darling of the People.

The next thing *Boris Moroson* had to do, was to petition for *Ann* the youngest Daughter of *Miloslanke*, and Sister to the Empress, which having been soon granted, he married her in eight days after; so, that his former Interest being now strengthened by this new Alliance, his Fortune was established beyond the reach of his Enemies. But, his Content at home was not altogether answerable to his great Fortune at Court; For, he being a Person pretty well advanced in Years, and the a brown Buxsome Lass, found herself deceived in a great measure in her Expectation; so that instead of Children, Jealousies were got, which produced the ordinary Effects, to wit, first Contentions, and afterwards (after the *Muscovian* way) the House-Discipline; and some Persons, among whom was also an *Englishman*, being suspected to have too free an Access to *Boris Moroson's* House, were by his Instigation banished into *Siberia*.

But whatever his Fortune might be at home, he was not careless in his Affairs at Court, where in Conjunction with *Ilia Danilovitch Miloslanke*, the Great Duke's Father-in-Law, they managed every thing to their own Advantage. For, they not only removed most of the Nobility from Court, but, by degrees, cast off all such old Officers of the Household as were yet remaining, in whose stead, they brought in their own Kindred and Creatures, who let slip no Opportunity to enrich themselves at the Expence of the Publick.

Among others, they had made one *Lepant-Stepanovitch Plessou*, Chief Justice of the *Semskoy Dvor* or *Semskoy Prikas*, a Court instituted for the Judgment of all Civil Causes between the Citizens of *Mosco*, where are also paid the Duties arising from Places and Houses that are sold; as also the Taxes levied for the Reparation of Bridges, Gates, Fortifiedes, and other publick Buildings. This Man be-

ing

ing entrusted with a Commission of so large an Extent, did abuse his Trust, to the great oppression of the People. For there was no Extortion, so great, which he was not ready to undertake. He would receive Presents from both Parties, and afterwards leave them in the lurch. But not content with this, his common Practice was, to suborn false Witnesses, whose employment was to bring in Charges against such of the Citizens of *Musco*, as he knew to be rich enough to redeem themselves out of his Persecutions; For, whenever they fell into his hands, he did not fail by imprisoning, and other violent and oppressive Methods, to oblige them to purchase their Liberty and his Favour with the ruin of their Fortunes.

He had a Brother-in-Law, whose name was *Peter Tichonovits Trochanistou*, one of those, whom in *Muscovy* they call *Ocolnits*, who are one degree under the *Boiars*, who are chosen out of their Number. Him they had made President of the *Puikarskoy Pricas*, and consequently had the oversight over all the Great Duke's Founders, Furbishers, Cannoneers, Armourers, Smiths and Carpenters, who wrought to the Arsenal. These Mechanicks were usually paid once a Month, according to the Custom of *Muscovy*, where Payments are made with greater Exactness, than in any other Part of *Europe*; instead of which he used to keep them in Arrears for many Months together, and in the mean while, to make use of their Money to his own Advantage; and when he had thus droven them to extremity, to force them to compound for half, or what they could get, and to give Acquittance for the whole Sum.

*Misoslavski* and *Morosou*, play'd the same Game in their several Stations, not only by selling at an excessive Rate all the Employments in the Kingdom, but also by procuring Monopolies, which ruined the Trade of the whole Empire. Among others they had got a Patent for one of their own Gang, prohibiting the further use of the common



mon Ells, hitherto used in *Muscovy*, but instead of that to make use of certain Iron ones with the Great Duke's Mark upon them; on purpose to oblige the People to buy the latter at the Price of a Crown per Piece; whereas they used to buy the others at 8 or 10 *d.* a Piece, whereby a necessity being laid upon the whole Kingdom of having them from the Patentees at their own Price, they gathered a vast Sum of Money, without giving any Account of it to the Great Duke's Treasury.

They had also found out another Invention to raise the Price of Salt from twenty to thirty Pence per Measure, containing about forty Pound Weight. This proved a heavy Burthen to the People, and of no Advantage to the Great Duke; For the dearth of the Salt had hindered the Sale of it, so that abundance of Fish being lost for want of Salting, the Great Duke's Revenue suffered by it upon a double Account.

The Inhabitants of *Musca* had enjoyed the Fruits of a very quiet and mild Government, under the Reign of his late Czarish Majesty, who being a Prince of incomparable Clemency, endeavoured thro' the whole course of his Reign, to make the Government easie to his Subjects, who had so long groan'd under the Calamities of their civil Disturbances; so that finding themselves thus oppressed beyond all measure, they could not brook this sudden Change, without shewing publicly their Resentments. The *Muscovites* seldom or never make their Cabals over the Bottle, they do not look upon strong Liquor to be a suitable Companion for those who intend to treat of States Affairs; they make use of their *Hydromel* and *Aqua vite* according to its primitive and genuine Institution, to exhilarate the Mind and drive away Cares. As they are the greatest Zealots in the World, so they begin commonly their States Reformati<sup>o</sup>ns a *Jove*, after they have been at Divine Service. Here it was the Chief Citizens used to meet, and to utter their Complaints against the Oppressions, which they  
groaned

grieved under by the Mismanagement of the Ministers of State, and resolved at last to Petition the Great Duke for a Redress of their Grievances.

But the main difficulty was, who among them all durst be so venturesome as to deliver the Petition; so that no body being willing to undertake that Task, a certain day was appointed to give it to the Great Duke himself with joint Consent, as he should come out of the Castle to go to his Devotion. They were as yet not so bold as to dare to attempt any thing against *Moroson*, by reason of his near Alliance to the Great Dutchess, tho' they knew him to be the main Instrument of these Calamities they suffered, but their Petition was, for the present, chiefly levell'd against *Lepont Stepanovits Plesson*, who by his most barbarous Exactions being become insupportable to them, they desired, that he might be removed from his Office, and his Place be supplied by some Person of known Integrity, of whom the People might expect more Justice. They had watched several Opportunities to deliver it to the Prince himself as he was going to his Devotions or Divertisements, but in vain; for the *Bojars*, who attended his Person had always took it from them, telling them that they would make a Report of it to the Great Duke; but this being done according to the Instructions received from *Moroson*, the Petition was not as much as answered, much less their Grievances redressed.

This hapning so often, that they found themselves absolutely mistaken in their whole Expectation, it was resolved, that they should meet together, and inspite of all the Opposition from the *Bojars* make their Complaints to the Great Duke by way of Mouth. The sixth of *July*, in the Year 1648, was pitch'd upon as a day fit for the execution of their Design, when they knew the Great Duke was to be present at a Procession to be made to a Monastery in the City, called *Stertenski*.

The People were got early together in the Morning, in the great Market-place before the Castle, to  
see

see him and his Cavalcade pass by as they were wont to do upon such like Occasions; But, whether it was that they did not think themselves strong enough, other that their Leaders were not present, they did not make the least Signs of dissatisfaction at his going to the Monastery; But, at his return, they broke through those that attended the Great Duke, came up to him, stay'd him, and taking hold of his Horses Bridle, intreated him to take their present Case into his Consideration, to hearken to the just Complaints of his Subjects, concerning the Injustices and Violences committed by *Plessow*, desiring that a Person of known Integrity might be put in his Place, who should better discharge so great a Trust.

The Great Duke was not a little startled at this unexpected procedure of the populace, but dissembling both his Surprize and Resentment, he spoke to them with a very chearful Countenance, telling them, that he was much troubled to understand the Grievances of his good Subjects, occasioned by the Mismanagement of *Plessow*, that he would forthwith examine the whole Matter, and take care that they should receive due Satisfaction in relation to all their just Complaints.

The Generality of the people appeared to be well satisfied with the Great Dukes Promise, which they testified by their joyful Acclamations; but some thronging still about the Great Duke's Horse, the Boyars who attended at this Solemnity, being for the most part Friends of *Plessow*, gave abusive Language to those who were near to the Czar, thrusting some away, and striking others with their Whips, which so incensed the Populace, that the Stones began to fly about the Courtiers Ears as thick as Hail, who were forced together with the Great Duke, to retire with all speed to the Castle, whither they were so closely and vigorously pursued by the People, that maugr all the resistance of the Guards, they had enough to do to reach the Great Dukes Lodgings before they were at the Heels of them.

The

The Strelits (or the Czar's Guards of Musqueteers) used all their endeavours to stop the Current of the Populace that were thronging into the Castle Gates, but their resistance proving fruitless, by reason of the infinite number of the People, it rather enflamed than abated their Fury, who cried out with one Voice, that if *Plessow* were not immediately delivered into their Hands, they would force the Princes Lodgings, and lay it level with the ground.

The Clamours and Threats of the People had put those within into a great Consternation, and not knowing what course best to take, *Morossow* was ordered to appear in the great Balcony, and to endeavour by his Authority, to appease the Tumult, desiring them in the Great Dukes Name, to repair to their respective Homes. He had scarce leisure given him to speak a few words, when some of the most forward among them tells him, That they were glad to see him there, knowing him to be of the same Stamp with *Plessow*, and that he should expect no better treatment than the other, which he should soon experience to his cost. They had no sooner said these words, but they led the Populace to his Palace, which being within the Precinct of the Castle, they forced, ransack'd, and pull'd down in an instant, after they had thrown some of his Servants out of the Windows, because they had made some Opposition.

The *Muscovites* generally shew a great deal of Veneration to the Images of their Saints, whom they will save from among the midst of the Flames at the perils of their Lives; but such was their Animosity against *Morossow*, that they spared not the least thing they found within the compass of his Palace, destroying all his Furniture of a great value, and not sparing the Images of the Saints; they broke to pieces his Coach of State, the richest that was ever seen in *Muscovy*, beat out the bottoms of the Strong Water Barrels, threw his Ladies Jewels and Pearls into the Street, trod on them with their Feet, and told her, that it was in respect to the  
Great



Great Dutcheſs her Siſter, and the Great Duke, for whom they had ſtill a great Veneration, that they did not make her pay with her Life for the Villanies of her Husband.

But this was only the Prologue to the enſuing Tragedy. For from thence they went ſtraightway to the Houſe of *Pleſſon*, which they ranſack'd and demolish'd in a moment: The ſame Game they play'd with the Palace of *Nazri Ivanovits Triſſon*, Lord Chancellour of *Miſcovy*, whom they Sacrificed to their fury, becauſe he had Farm'd the new Impoſition upon Salt. It was his miſfortune to be juſt then ſick in Bed, by reaſon of an accident that had hapned within ſome days before, when meeting in the ſtreets with a mad Ox, he was thrown by his Horſe with ſo much violence, that it had put him in danger of his Life; but hearing how the Populace was in Arms, and in what manner they had ranſack'd the Palace of *Moroſon* and *Pleſſon*, and judging, not without reaſon, that they would alſo give him a Viſit in his turn, he hid himſelf under a great heap of Birch, which at a certain time, the *Miſcovites* make Proviſion of againſt the Winter, to ſerve their Stores; and to take away all ſuſpicion, he had cauſed a good number of Flitches of Bacon to be laid acroſs of them. He had ſcarce had leiſure enough to prepare this retiring place, before the Clamours of the approaching Rabble gave him ſufficient warning what he had to expect from them: To be ſhort, they forc'd open the Doors, took away all his rich Movables, and knowing him to be in no conſideration of ſtirling abroad, ſearch'd for him in all the moſt abſtruſe corners of the Houſe, even to the Cellars and Stables; but not being able to find him out, he had certainly eſcaped their Hands for that time, if he had not been betray'd by one of his Servants, who being inticed by a good ſum of Money which was immediately given him, ſhew'd them the place where his Maſter lay conceal'd. The enraged Multitude, without any further delay, drags him out by the Heels into the ſtreets, where  
the

they immediately cudgelled him to death. This done, they threw his Body upon the Dunghil, Pillag'd his House, and laid it level with the ground.

The same they did to the House of *Peter Tichonovits Trochaniffou*, whom we have mentioned before to have been constituted Overseer over the Great Duke's Arsenal, and to all others whom they knew to have any Relation, or Dependance on *Morsou*; which afforded them such a Booty, that they measured the Pearls in their Caps; and as for rich Furs and all Sorts of the best Silk Stuffs, they had such a Quantity of them as to throw them about in the Streets for any body to take them up at their pleasure.

Whilst the Populace spent the whole day in ransacking and pulling down of the Houses, those in the Castle had leisure given them to barricado and prepare themselves against their Return, which they expected the next Morning, they continuing in such a Posture all the Night as sufficiently shew'd they only expected Daylight to renew the old Game.

The Great Duke in the mean while, having found his *Muscovite* Guards insufficient the day before to make head against the Insolencies of the People, had sent for the *German* Officers with their Regiments that were quartered near the City, to meet at their several Rendezvous, and to march without delay to the Relief of the Castle. Pursuant to these Orders they marched the next Morning with Drums beating, and Colours flying, and Arms ready, thro' the Heart of the City to the Castle; whereat the *Muscovites*, being not a little terrified, durst not attempt to stop their Passage, but instead of Opposing them, gave them Way, telling them as they pass'd by, that they knew them to be Men of Honour and Courage, who had no dependance on those Villains who by their Mismanagement abused the People, and that they had no Quarrel against them: Having therefore without the least Opposition taken up their several Posts assign'd

N

them

## The Antient and Present State

them for their Guards, the Great Duke laid hold of this Opportunity, to endeavour the Appeasing of the Tumult by the Authority of Knez *Nikita Ivanovits Romanow*, whom he knew to be much respected by the People.

He appear'd before them with Cap in Hand, and told them in the Name of the Great Duke his Master, that he hoped they would be satisfied with the Promise and Assurance given by his Czarish Majesty's own Mouth, that he himself would take Cognisance of the Matter, and remedy the Grievances of which they complained. That his Majesty had sent him on purpose to give them fresh Assurances, that he was not unmindful of his Word, but would give them all the Satisfaction in this Point they could reasonably desire, and to advise them to break up the Assembly and for every one to repair to his own Home, that he might the better perform what he had promised them the day before.

This Message being received with the joyful Acclamations of the People, sufficiently testifying their Approbation, answer was made that they had no reason to be dissatisfied with the Great Duke, but with those who made use of his Name and Authority to execute their execrable Villanies upon the People; And that therefore they could not rest satisfied, nor would they stir from the Place, till *Boris Ivanovits Morosou*, *Leponti Stephanovits Plesson*, and *Peter Tichtonovits Trochanistou* were delivered up to them; that they might revenge upon their Heads all those Mischiefs they had done the Kingdom.

*Romanow* shewed them his Acknowledgment for the favourable Audience they had afforded him, telling them, that he would immediately go and acquaint the Great Duke with the Zeal and Affection they had expressed for his Person, and that he did not question but that the Great Duke would grant their Request, and order the Execution of those three Lords, who had drawn upon themselves the Hatred

Hatred of his good Subjects, by their Mismanagement; but that he was ready to swear to them by the Cross, that *Morofon* and *Trochanifon* had made their Escape at the first beginning of the Tumult, and for the third, he dares engage his Word, he should be brought to Execution immediately.

*Romanow* being returned to the Great Duke, it was, after a short Debate, resolved to sacrifice *Plessou* and *Trochanifon* to the Fury of the People, who with a great deal of Impatience waited at the Castle Gate for the Great Duke's Answer, but to endeavour by all means possible the Preservation of *Morofon*; but that, to appease the Rage of the People, Word should be sent them immediately, that *Plessou* was coming out forthwith to be sacrificed, and that the other two should receive the same Punishment, so soon as they were found, which was done accordingly; and the People being desired to send for the Executioner to do his Office, they had him ready at Hand with all his Servants attending at the Castle Gate; whence, in less than a quarter of an Hours time they saw him leading the miserable *Plessou* into the Market-place before the Castle, in order to cut off his Head. But the People were so exasperated against him, that they fell upon him immediately with Cudgels so outrageously that they dispatched him in a Moment. His Body was dragged by the Feet thro' the Streets, accompanied with Millions of Curses of the Populace; till at last a Monk who had a particular Spleen against the deceased, cut off his Head, and carried it away in Triumph.

The Execution of *Plessou* and the reiterated Promises of the Great Duke, that the rest, when found, should come to the same end, begot some calm in the Peoples Minds, who had sent their Messengers upon all the Roads leading to the City, in search after *Morofon* and *Trochanifon*; the first finding his Escape almost impossible, by reason of the Peoples searching so closely after him, had found means to lay

*Plessou*  
massacred.



Trochanistou  
Ex-  
cuted.

lay concealed at a particular Friend's House, at a little distance from the City, from whence he returned by secret ways, the next night into the Castle.

But *Trochanistou* had not the same good Fortune to escape the Hands of his Enemies, but being overtaken upon the Road by some of the Great Duke's Messengers (who for fear of being thought to have consented to his Escape, had been forced to employ all his Care in finding him out) he was brought the next day, being the 8th of July, to the same place where he used to sit as Judge over the Cannoniers, Armourers, and others belonging to the Great Duke's Arsenal; where, by order from the Great Duke, he had his Head cut off.

By this time the People being informed how *Morofou* had been seen in the Country, and ignorant of his return into the Castle, they seem'd to be satisfied with the Execution of *Trochanistou* for this time, forbearing to press any further upon the Great Duke to give them what was not in his power to do; so that towards Noon they began to disperse, and prepare to go to their respective Homes.

A Conf-  
-ration in  
houses.

The same afternoon several Houses (whether by accident or by the malice of the Rabble, who had not quite cleared the streets and committed great Insolences, is uncertain) were set on fire, which made such a Havock in a few hours, that it consumed the whole Quarter of *Czargorod*, or City Royal, reducing to Ashes all the Houses within the compass of the White Wall (which surrounds that Quarter) down to the River *Neglina*: Towards Night it got over that River into the Great Duke's Taverns, into his Store-Houses for Strong Waters and other Provisions, where it consumed above sixty thousand Fitches of Bacon, and an incredible quantity of *Aqua-Vita*; which being the most proper Fuel in the World to nourish the Flame, it grew so violent, that the Castle was in most imminent danger to have been reduced to Ashes by this raging Element; no body endeavouring to stop its fury, because those who had the Charge of quench-  
ing

ing the Fire being got Drunk, and inebriated with the Exhalations of the Strong Waters, were incapable of performing that Service; many of them lying in the streets choak'd with the Smoak and Vapours, which so terified the *Muscovites*, that none among them durst approach the Flames.

About Mid-night some Foreigners looking with no small astonishment on the Fire, which just then had seized upon one of the Store-Houses, where were kept a great quantity of Bacon for the Great Duke's Provision, they perceived, at some distance, a Monk with a Sack upon his back coming towards them, as if he carried a very great Burthen, and coming near to them, they asked him what made him thus blow and be all in a sweat? He to told them, that he had made all the haste he could, to come to quench the Flames: that if they would but lend him a helping Hand, to throw the Body (which he shew'd them) of the curst *Plessou* into the Fire, they should soon see the Flame lose its force. The Strangers having refused to comply with his desire, which they looked upon as ridiculous, he heap'd upon them a thousand Curses, till some *Muscovites* upon his perswasions, were prevailed upon to do him the good Office, and to help him to cast the dead Carcass into the Fire, which in an instant began to abate, and in two hours after, was quite extinguish'd; more by the assistance of those who being encourag'd by the Monk, and came from all Parts to the quenching of the Flames, than by the Charms of the Superstitious Fryar.

Those in the Castle having thus weathered the Storm that threatned them, the following days were taken up in Consultations how to continue this Calm among the People, and by which means to preserve *Morofon* from falling into their Hands: For which reason, the Patriarch having sent for those among the Priests and Monks, whom he knew to be of most Authority among the Populace of the City of *Musco*; they were enjoind to do their utmost in endeavouring the Settlement of the unquiet Sp-

rits, by their Spiritual Exhortations, and to represent to them in the most passionate manner that could be, the Respect and Obedience due to their Sovereign. The Great Duke having also taken off the New Imposition upon Salt, and Promised to suppress all Monopolies lately set up by his Ministers, supply'd the Places of the Executed *Trochanistow* and *Plessow*, the first by the Boyar *Knez Jurgi Alexiovits Dolgaruskoi*, the second with the *Ocolnits Za Bogdan Mattheovits Chitrou*, both Persons of great Ability, and approved Probity. He Treated the *Strelits* with Strong Waters and Hydromel, and caused *Ilia Danilovits*, his Father-in-law, to invite the Chief Citizens of the several Professions in the City of *Musco*, who were very splendidly and kindly Entertained at his Palace for several days together.

Having thus prepared his way, he took the opportunity of a Procession, when being accompanied with the same *Nikita Ivanovits Romanow*, who had been so successful before in appeasing the Tumult, and now rid by his left side, he spoke to the People, and told them, That he had been extremely troubled to understand the Violences and Injuries committed by *Trochanistow* and *Plessow*, upon his good Subjects, whose welfare was very dear to him; that those Extortions executed under his Name and Authority, had been quite contrary to his Inclinations and Commands: And that therefore having let them suffer condign Punishment for their Villanies, he had put in their Places Persons of known Integrity and Ability, whom he believed would be acceptable to the People, as knowing them to be Persons, that would execute Justice without Corruption or Partiality. That he had already abolished the New Imposition upon Salt, and would take care, that all Monopolies newly introduced by his Ministers, should be suppress'd; That he for the future, would himself keep a watchful Eye over their Actions, and not suffer their Privileges to be diminished, but rather, if occasion were, would see them augmented.

The Populace being overjoy'd at this inveigling Speech of the Great Duke, shew'd the most profound respect they were capable of, by siniting their Foreheads on the ground, and giving him all the imaginable Thanks and Promises of their future Fidelity; so that the Czar thinking this a fit opportunity to declare his Sentiments concerning *Morofon*, he reassumed the Discourse, telling them, That he was not forgetful of what he had promised them sometime before concerning *Boris Ivanovits Morofon*, and that he was obliged to confess, that he had transacted many things, which he would not in any wise justify; but that on the other Hand, he had so much confidence in his good People, as to hope they would excuse him, if at this time he could not immediately resolve to condemn him to Death. That this being his first Request, he lived in hopes they would not deny it him, which was, that for once they would pardon the past Miscarriages of *Morofon*, on whom he desired them to look as one who had been the Guardian of their Prince, and had Married the Great Dutcheſs's Sister, who upon this double account must needs be very dear to him, and consequently that it would be the hardest thing in the World, for him to consent to his Death. That he himself would be answerable for his future Good Behaviour, not questioning but that he would behave himself so as that they should not have the least reason to complain of him; and, that if they would declare him incapable by their unanimous Vote, of being admitted into his Council for the future, he should be dismiss'd.

The Great Duke being then not twenty Years of Age, and of a very tender Constitution, could not forbear to accompany his last words with some Tears, which so moved the People, that they cried out with one Voice, *Long live our Great Duke, God grant him a long and happy Reign, God's and the Great Duke's Will be done.* The Czar having given them his Thanks, and extolled their Zeal and Affection for his Person, returned to the Castle well satisfied



in having been so successful, to reconcile his Brother-in-law to the Citizens of his Imperial City of *Musco*.

Some days after, the Great Duke according to Custom, went a Pilgrimage to the Monastery of *Troitza*, about Threescore Miles from *Musco*, when *Morofou* took this opportunity of appearing again the first time in Publick. As he went through the City he was uncovered, Saluting the People on both sides of the way with great Submission. He countenanced the Old Nobility for some time, and ever after laid hold on all occasions to gratifie the People, and assist those who Address'd themselves to him in any Business they had at Court; so that in a little time there appear'd a great change in the Affairs of the Government of *Muscovy*; and *Morofou* became the Favourite of the People, and the Patron to all Strangers, maintaining his Greatness till his Old Age, when he died, much lamented by the People, but not the Nobility; and as much beloved by his Prince as he had been always successful in his Counsels.

But to return where we left off, notwithstanding this Remarkable Alteration in the Government, there hapned not long after another Revolt, which, if it had not been timely prevented by the vigilancy of those at the Helm, might have proved of dangerous Consequence to the Empire, which was occasioned thus:

Some differences were arisen betwixt the two Crowns of *Muscovy* and *Sweden*, by reason that the Subjects of both Kingdom, leaving their Habitations in their Respective Native Countries, used to seek for shelter in the others Dominions, to avoid the Payment of their Debts. These differences improved by some Reasons of State, were risen to that height, that both States seem'd to be threatned with an inevitable War, unless prevented by a speedy Composition: In order to which the Great Duke *Alexis Michaelovits* sent in the Year 1649. (the next following after the Insurrection in the City of *Musco*) a Solemn Ambassy to *Christina* Queen of *Sweden*,

the Chief whereof was a certain *Ocolnitza* called *Boris Ivanovits Puskia*. And in regard that it was 32 Years since the Accounts had been cleared betwixt the two Nations, it was Agreed by certain Articles made at that time, That for the first Thirty Years there should be a Liquidation of all Accounts; but that in regard there were more *Swedes* now in *Muscovy* than there were *Muscovites* in *Sweden*, by which the first remain'd considerably Indebted to the last; the Great Duke should pay to the Crown of *Sweden* 190000 Rubles, which amounts to Ninety odd Thousand Pounds Sterling of *English* Money; whereof 300000 Crowns were to be paid in ready Cash, and the rest in Rye; and the whole Payment to be at the beginning of the next following Year, which was but a few Months after the Conclusion of the Treatise.

Pursuant to this Agreement, the Queen of *Sweden* had sent one *John Rhodes* in Quality of her Commissioner into *Muscovy*, who received the above-named 300000 Crowns in Ducats, and as to what related to the Rye, he was ordered to receive it from one *Fedor Amilianou*, a *Muscovian* Merchant in the City of *Pleskon*.

This Merchant having been Impowered by the Great Duke to buy up thereabouts so much Rye for his Use as would answer the remaining part of the Debt, which amounted to 90000 Crowns, made use of this opportunity to enrich himself at the cost of his poor fellow Subjects. For having, under the Cover of the Great Duke's Authority, caus'd all the Rye thereabouts to be seis'd, and not permitting any body either to buy or to sell any without his leave, he Engrossed the whole Commodity for his own use, selling it at his own Rate, which was too excessive, that a great many poor people were driven to the greatest extremity for want of it. The Inhabitants of *Pleskon*, as they were most nearly concerned in this Abuse, so they were the first that openly murmured against this Oppression, charging not only the *Swedes* with Avarice, but also particularly

ly exclaiming against *Puskin* the *Muscovian* Ambassador in *Sweden*, whom they charged with Prevarication in his Employment, and Perfidiousness to his Prince. They did not spare *Morofon*, who they said, preferred the Interest of Strangers before the Welfare of the Natives.

They were not wanting to draw the City of *Novogorod Veliki*, and other adjacent Parts into their Party, and being perswaded that this Negotiation had been carried on without the Knowledge, and contrary to the Intention of the Great Duke, every thing seem'd to tend to a general Insurrection in those parts, if the Weywode or Governour of *Novogorod* by his prudent Conduct, had not kept those under his Jurisdiction in Obedience; yet could not hinder their taking a Resolution to stop the Money as it should come their way, in order to be carried into *Sweden*.

Those of *Pleskon* absolutely refus'd, that such a quantity of Rye, the transportation of which, in all likelihood must starve them, should be exported into *Sweden*. And the better to be satisfied whether the said Treaty was set on foot and executed by the Great Duke's Order, they sent three Deputies of their own to Court, *to wit*, a Merchant of that City, a *Cosack* and a *Strelitz*, to inform themselves concerning the truth of the matter, and to desire Redress of their Grievances. But they were no sooner arrived at *Novogorod*, but the Weywode of that City caused them to be clapt in Irons, and thus Fetter'd, sent them to Court, where at the same time arriv'd the Weywode of *Pleskon*, and the Merchant *Amilianou*, who had been forced to quit the City for fear of the Populace.

For, the first having endeavoured to prevent those Disorders which were daily committed by the Mob, they forced him with his Guards out of the Town, and *Amilianou*, not thinking himself safe without the Governour's assistance, accompanied him to the City of *Mosco* to make his Complaints to the Great Duke.

Nor was he mistaken in his Judgment ; for no sooner had he left the City, but the Citizens of *Pleskou*, without expecting the Return of their Deputies, or before they had the least Notice of the Treatment, they had receiv'd at *Novogorod*, ransack'd *Amilianus's* House, and tortured his Wife in a most cruel and barbarous manner, to make her confess where her Husband had hid his Money. The same Game they plaid with several *Swedish* Merchants living among them, whom they robb'd, plunder'd, and abus'd in their Persons. This done, they published their Manifesto against Monopolies and Patentees, inviting the Neighbouring Cities to join with them in the Defence of their Privileges.

The Court having soon received Intelligence of these Insolencies, they were not a little surprized especially when they got notice that this murinous Spirit began to spread it self in some of the other Cities in the Northern Provinces bordering upon *Sweden*, and thinking it therefore most advisable to try whether by gentle Means they could suppress and prevent any further Tumults, it was resolv'd to send back the Weywode of *Pleskou*, and with him a Boyar, who in the Great Duke's Name should endeavour to quiet those restless Spirits.

Those of *Plesko* were for a considerable time debating whether they should open their Gates to them or not, but the first being at last resolv'd upon, they gave them Admittance, but it was to put the Weywode in Prison, and to affront the Boyar, who having spoken to them in the Great Duke's Name, with more Authority than they thought becoming him in his present Station, they fell upon him with Cudgels and beat him so severely, that he was fain to seek for Refuge in a Monastery, where he laid for some time half dead, every one despairing of his Recovery.

The Great Duke having received Information in what manner his Ministers had been treated by the *Pleskovites*, who had shut their Gates and put themselves in a posture of defence ; and learning, not without



Plesko b.  
sieged.

Is reduced.

without reason, that some of the neighbouring Cities, encouraged by their Example, might tread their Footsteps, if by a severe Chastisement they were not deter'd from such like Undertakings against his Authority for the future, it was resolved to prosecute the rebellious *Pleskovites* with the utmost Rigour. In order to which, the Great Duke commanded *Ivan Nikitovits Gavenski* to assemble the Nobility and standing Militia of the neighbouring Provinces, and to join with them several Regiments of the foreign Forces commanded by the Collonels *Kormichel*, *Hamilton* and others, to besiege the City of *Pleskou*, and not to stir from thence till they had reduced it to Obedience. The Inhabitants at first seemed not at all startled at this Resolution, and were so far from making their Submission to their Prince, that they resolved unanimously to stand it out to the last, and accordingly put themselves and their City in a posture of Defence. They shewed at the first approach of the Czar's Army, no less Bravery than they had shewed Resolution in their Counsels; For they made several furious Sallies upon the Besiegers with such Success that they found themselves obliged to make use of their heavy Cannon, which having made a large Breach in their Works, their Hearts and Strength began to fail them, so that they were forced to surrender at Discretion.

The Czar being resolved by an exemplary Punishment to deter the rest of his Subjects from committing such Outrages, caused the Ring-leaders of this Sedition to be tortured and put to death, some at *Pleskou*, some in the adjacent Cities, some in their City of *Musco*, and a great many of the *Pleskovites* were banished into *Siberia*, where these State-Reformators were employed in Sable-Hunting. All things being thus quieted by the Vigilancy of the Great Duke, he pursued the Execution of the Treaty made with the Crown of *Sweden*; And the Rye in those Northern Parts having been by the Fury of the Populace for the most part either de-

stroyed

stroyed or consumed, so that it was impossible to bring together a sufficient Quantity within the time limited by the Treaty, he paid the *Swedish* Commissioner Money instead of Rye, and caused him under a sufficient Guard of *Strelits* (to protect him against the Insolencies of the Rabble) to be conducted to the Frontiers of the Kingdom of *Sweden*.

These Disorders having been, thus appeased by the Prudence of his Czarish Majesty, yet caused no small Change in the Government of *Muscovy*. For the Great Duke, having been made sensible of the Miscarriages of those who being the Creatures of *Morofon* and *Miloslanski*, had abused their Authority to the detriment of the People, removed them out of all Places of Trust. And as to *Miloslanski* and *Morofon*, tho' by reason of their near Alliance to the Great Duke, they retained much Credit at Court; and *Morofon* especially, discharg'd his Trust ever after with a great deal of Prudence and Fidelity; yet the Czar did distribute his Favours with a more equal Hand among the other Knez and Boyars, who had a great share in all publick Affairs, and executed their Charges every one according to his Birth and Employment.

For which Reason he caused Knez *Boris Alexandrovits Rappenin*, and Knez *Fedor Simonovits Curakin*, (whom we mention'd before to have been sent by *Morofon* to the Governments of *Nisi-Novogorod* and *Câsan*) to be called to Court where in Conjunction with Knez *Juan Andreovits Galitzin*, *Boris Nikita Ivanovits Romanow*, the Czar's Great Uncle, they were consulted with in all Affairs of Moment, and remained in great Authority with this Prince, who had always a watchful Eye over his Ministers, lest they should under the Cloak of his Authority impose upon his Subjects.

For which Reason he would frequently in the Night Season go about and Visit his Chancellours and other Judges Desks to see what Decrees were pass'd, and what Petitions were laid by unanswer'd.

He

He employed his Spies in every Corner, so that there was scarce any Feast, great Meeting, Burial, or Wedding of Note, but he knew all what was transacted there. He entertained a good Number of Gentlemen of small Fortunes, who absolutely depending on his Favour, were sent as Spies with the Ambassadors, and into the Armies, to attend and watch their Motions, and to give a true Account of all their Transactions.

If he found any of his Officers deficient in their Trust, he was sure not to escape Punishment; as it happened to *Peter Solticove* a *Muscovian* Lord, and Governour of *Russia minor*. This *Solticove* used to keep the Arrears of the Soldiery in his Hands to improve it to his Advantage by Merchandising and otherwise. A certain *Russian* Captain, a Native of that Province, having been kept without Pay three whole Years, and in vain addressed himself to the Governour, took the Opportunity of the Czar's going into the Country to take his Pleasure (at what time no body is permitted to interrupt his Divertisements), and thronging too near the Czar's Coach with a Petition in his Hands he suspecting him to be an Assassin, with his Staff (which was piked at the End not unlike a Dart) intending to make him withdraw at a farther Distance, struck the Fellow to the Heart, so that he died immediately.

Those that attended the Czar's Person being surprized at the Accident, and judging no otherwise than that he intended to have made an Attempt against the Great Duke's Life, rid up to the Coach and searching what Arms he had about him, found nothing but a wooden Spoon, and the Petition for his Arrears. The Czar shewed a great Concern for this Mishap, and sending immediately to *Solticove* the Governour of that Province, he checked him severely, telling him that he was guilty of the Blood of this innocent Person, and that he deserved to receive the same Treatment; That however he would spare his Life for this time, but

but that he discharged him from his Commission, ordering him not to appear for the future at Court, and appointing *Nashockin* then his premier Minister to succeed him in that Office, and to search into the past Misdemeanours thereof, in order to redress the Grievances of his Subjects.

For, it is to be observ'd, that after the Death of *Morofou Illia Danielovits Miloflanski*, the Great Duke's Father in Law *Nashockin* succeeded him in the Place of Chief Minister of State and all his other Employments. *Miloflanski* was a Man of a very strong Body and goodly Aspect, bold, and of great Judgment, rather feared than beloved by the Czar; but his Interest was upheld by his Daughter. It is related of him, that he had so prodigious a Memory, as to have perfectly well known all the the Commission Officers of an Army of a Hundred Thousand Men, (of which he was Generalissimo) where they Quartered, and what their Qualifications were. He was also Lord High Treasurer of *Muscovy*, and had several other Offices bestowed upon him, all which he managed with great dexterity. Tho' he was pretty well advanced in Years, he was a great Admirer of the fair Sex, and for his Satisfaction entertained a good Number of very handsom *Polish* and *Tartarian* Female-Slaves. His eager pursuit after amorous Pleasures had almost lost him the Czar's Favour; as an Apoplexy disabled him at last in Body and Mind, so as to know no Body without being told.

He was succeeded in his high Employments, by the just now mentioned *Nashockin*, who was also made Chancellor of the Ambassadors Office, and Governour of *Russia Minor*. He was a Person of more than ordinary Integrity, not to be corrupted by Presents or other Illegal means; very sober and indefatigable in Business. The first proofs of his great Capacity he gave at the Conclusion of the Peace betwixt the *Muscovites* and *Poles*, to the no small advantage of the first, which was absolutely transacted by his Vigilancy and Conduct; as was also  
the



## The Antient and Present State

the League betwixt the Great Duke and *Swedeland*. It was he that settled the Silk Trade upon a good Foundation through *Russia*, and shew'd them the way, how the *Indian Trade* might be drawn that way. He Reform'd and new Modell'd the *Russian* Laws all over the Empire, so that Suits should be less dilatory, and Criminals to be Examined and Judged by the Governours of the Provinces with their Assitants; whereas most of the Criminals were before that time brought to *Musco*, with no less Trouble to the Prisoners than Charge to the Czar. He was a great Admirer of Monarchy, and a Patron of the *English*; as on the other hand, *Bogdan Musfelt* always was a secret Enemy both to *Nisbockin* and the *English*, but a great Friend of the *Dutch*, who used to purchase his Favour by great Presents.

This *Bogdan* was bred up with the Czar from a Child, and was much of the same Age. He was Lord High Sreward of the Household, having in his disposal all Domestick Affairs. He used to be called the Whispering Favourite, because the Czar asked his Advice oftner in his Closet than at the Council-Board. It was by his Connivance that the *Jews* got secretly footing in that Court and the City of *Musco*; whereas before that time they were abominable to the *Muscovites*, because they supplied him with handsome young Slaves out of *Poland*, which he entertained for his Pleasure, some in the Country, and some in his Palace in *Musco*. His Lady being Jealous of these Slaves, shew'd her Reentment at several times in so outrageous a manner, that her Death being resolved on, she was one Night Poysoned in a Plate of Sweet-meats; or as others will have it, in a Glas of Wine.

The Character of  
Alexis Michaelovits

As for the Czar *Alexis Michaelovits* himself, he was a Person of a Majestick Deportment; Tall, inclining to Fat, of a Sanguine Complexion, and Light Brown Hair, Beautiful and Charitable, but severe in his Anger; of a very strong Memory, strict in his Devotion, and a great Favourer of his Religion,

in

in the Observance of which, he was the strictest Man in the World. For he never missed Diving Service; and if indisposed, used to have it performed in his Bed-Chamber. On Fast-days he would frequent Mid-night Prayers, standing four or five hours together prostrating himself to the Ground. During the great Fasts, he would eat but three Meals a Week, being contented for the rest, with a piece of Brown Bread and Salt, a pickled Mushroom or Cucumber, and a Cup of Quas, or small Mead. In short, it has been observed of him, that no Monk was ever more observant of the Canonical hours, than he of Fasts; it having been computed, that he fasted above Eight Months in the Year. He would also frequently appear at the Processions bare-headed and on foot, and was always a declared Patron of the *Muscovite* Church; notwithstanding which, he would sometimes make bold with the Church Revenue upon Loan, in time of War, which he was not very careful to repay, knowing that the Church Treasury, which is supplied out of the best part of the Empire, may now and then dispense with a Loss for the benefit of the Publick. He also made an Ordinance to restrain the profuse Bounty of dying Men to the Clergy; neither would he ever suffer a Monastery to be Founded without his License.

Every *Good-Friday* he used to visit in the Night all the Prisons in the City of *Musco*, to take Personal Cognisance of all the Prisoners; among whom he would buy out some that were in Debt, and release others that were Criminals; and bestow sometimes great Sums for the use of such as he knew to be really necessitated. He would cause the Empress to do the same, and to redeem yearly a certain number of Women out of Prison. He ordered also at about seven or eight Miles distance from the Imperial City, Work-Houses to be built for Hemp and Flax, in that good Order, Beauty and Capacity, that they were sufficient to Employ all the poor in the Kingdom with Work; having  
O settled

settled for that use a good many Miles of waste Lands, by which he improved the Manufactury of the Country, and fed his Labourers at a very cheap rate. He Assign'd that part of the Building where the Women were Employ'd, for the Use and Profit of the Empress. He was of so mild a Temper, that he seldom condemned any to Death, but most commonly to the Strapado and Banishment into *Siberia*. Being one time urg'd by some of his Foreign Officers, to make it Death for any Man to Desert his Colours; he answered them, *That he thought that would be too hard upon the poor Soldiers, since it was certain that God had not given every Man an equal share of Courage.*

Notwithstanding these his Mild and Charitable Inclinations, he was of a Warlike Spirit, having been Engag'd in Wars against the *Poles*, *Swedes*, *Crim-Tartars*, and *Turks*. For being sufficiently sensible of the Advanrage the *Poles* had got during the late Intestine Commotions in *Muscovy*, by making themselves Masters of the Provinces of *Severia* and *Smolensko*, in the Possession of which, they were confirmed by Virtue of the Truce made by his Father *Michael Federovitch*, after his Disgrace received at the Siege of *Smolensko*: And the Term of the said Truce being now expired when the *Poles* were Engaged in a Mortal Quarrel with the *Cossacks*, he look'd upon this Juncture, as the most favourable that could be, by the Recovery of these Provinces, to secure his Frontiers against so Potent a Neighbour.

For which purpose having settled a Correspondence with *Chmielniski*, the then General of the *Cossacks*, and offered them his Protection; these were at first very successful against the *Poles*, of whom they killed Ten Thousand upon the spot, and took from them the City of *Kiovia*. And the *Poles* having drawn out a second time their whole Force against them, were again miserably beaten by the *Cossacks*; till at last, having committed great Depredations in *Poland*, King *John Casimir* was obliged to March in Person against them, who having  
totally

totally routed them, they Embraced the Protection of the Great Duke. He finding himself thus *His War* strengthened by the accession of so considerable a *with the* Force, did apply all his Care for the recovery of *Smolensk*; for which purpose having brought together a great Army, and a vast Train of Artillery, he besieged the City of *Smolensk* in the Year 1653. and notwithstanding the Resolute Defence of the *Polish* Garrison, made himself Master of it in the Year next following.

The taking of which Place was chiefly attributed to the *Cossacks*, who upon all occasions gave the utmost proofs of their Bravery, and Hatred against the *Poles* during this Memorable Seige.

Having thus opened his way into *Poland*, he carried the Terror of his Victorious Arms into the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania*, he Ravaged the whole Country, took many Cities; and in the Year 1655. also the Capital City, called *Vilna*; where, as well as in other places, the *Muscovites* committed most horrid Barbarities, in Retaliation, as they said, of those Calamities they had suffered by the *Polish* Invasion, during their Intestine Commotions.

In the same Year *Charles Gustavus* King of *Sweden*, entered *Poland* with an Army of Chosen Men, and having soon Conquered the *Great and Lesser Poland*, and *Mosovia*, with the City of *Cracovia*, Marched from thence into *Prussia*, where he was received by most of the Cities, except *Dantzick*, who stood firm to the Interest of King *Casimir*. Seeing his Affairs reduc'd to that Extremity, he fled himself into *Silesia* for Refuge and Aid from the Emperour; so that not only the whole standing Militia of *Poland*, but also that part of *Lithuania*, which was not as yet Conquered by the *Muscovites*, submitted themselves to the *Swedish* Protection.

Czar *Alexis Michaelovits*, not thinking it Advisable to Encounter the *Swedes*, flush'd with their late Success, and strengthened by the whole Force of *Poland*, judg'd it more for his Interest, to make use of this Opportunity, whilst the *Swedes* were



*His War* Engaged with the *Poles*, to transfer his Arms into  
*with Swe-* *Livonia*, where he hoped to make a considerable  
*den.* Progress in the absence of their King, *Charles Gus-*  
*stavus*, before he should be able to come to their  
 Relief.

*Enters Li-* Pursuant to this Resolution, he entred *Livonia*  
*vania.* with a very Puissant Army, and Besieged *Torpat*,  
 which after some Resistance, he took by Compo-  
 sition.

*Is forced* Having soon after made himself Master of *Ko-*  
*to Raise* *kenhousen*, and some other places of Note, he laid  
*the Siege* Siege to the City of *Riga*, the Capital of the Pro-  
*of Riga.* vince of *Lettie* in *Livonia*, Situate upon the River  
*Dune*, which exonerates it self into the *Baltick Sea*;  
 but the *Swedish* Garrison defended the Place with so  
 much Galantry, that the *Muscovites*, notwithstanding  
 their reiterated Attacks, were forced to Raise  
 the Siege with very great Loss.

In the mean time the *Poles* having recollected  
 themselves, after their first Consternation, had De-  
 feated and Dispersed the *Swedes* that were Quarter-  
 ed up and down the Country; had Retaken *Warso-*  
*via*, and the Revolted *Lithuanians*, had Surprised  
 and Killed all the *Swedes* that were in Winter Quar-  
 ters with them.

And tho' *Charles Gustavus* the *Swedish* King (hav-  
 ing been joined before by the Elector of *Branden-*  
*burgh's* Forces) did Vanquish the *Poles* in a Memo-  
 rable Battle, which lasted Three Days near *Warso-*  
*via*; yet being soon after obliged to March out of  
*Poland* against the *Danes*, the *Poles* Retook *Cracovia*  
 and *Thorn* from the *Swedes*, and Recovered *Conr-*  
*land* out of their Hands.

At last both Crowns being Tired with the War,  
 a Treaty of Peace was set on foot in the Year 1666.  
 in the Monastery of *Oliva* near the City of *Dantzick*,  
 in the Royal *Prussia*; so that Czar *Alexis Michaelo-*  
*vits* fearing not without Reason, that after the  
 Peace was Concluded betwixt both those Potent  
 Kingdoms, they might turn their United Forces a-  
 gainst him, proposed to be included in the said Tre-  
 aty;

ry; by Virtue of which, both the *Muscovites* and *Poles* <sup>Peace made</sup> Relinquish'd their Pretensions upon *Livonia* to the *Swedes*; but the first were Confirm'd in the Possession of *Smolensko*, *Severia* and *Kiovia*, which was given them by the *Poles* as an Equivalent of what they lost in *Livonia*. In lieu of which, the *Swedes* restor'd to the *Poles* all the places they were possess'd of in the Royal *Prussia*, and the later Resign'd the whole Sovereignty over the Ducal *Prussia* to the Elector of *Brandenburgh*. This Peace proved very Advantagious to the *Muscovites*, who by the Recovery of these Frontier Provinces, secured themselves against the further Attempts of a most Potent Neighbour.

The War he was engaged in against the *Turks* <sup>His War</sup> and *Crim Tartars*, was occasioned because some of the *Zaporogian Cossacks* had submitted themselves <sup>to him</sup> under his Protection (as we mentioned before) whereas some of them had sought for Protection under the Grand Seignior, which occasioned a War betwixt these two potent Neighbours, in which the *Muscovites* got but little Advantage; For the *Crim Tartars* made an Irruption into *Muscovy*, and carried away above 400000 Souls into perpetual Captivity.

There had some years before also been swept away by the Plague betwixt seven and eight Hundred thousand People, and a great Number of Men had been lost in the War with the *Poles* and *Swedes*; So that betwixt the Sword and Plague, it was computed that *Muscovy* had in Ten years time lost near a Million and a half of People, which so impoverished and depopulated the Country, that abundance of the best Land lay untill'd for want of Hands, and that in some of the Southern Parts, where the *Crim Tartars* had made their Inroads, there was scarce any thing to be seen but Women and Children; Since which time however the *Russian* Empire has in a great measure recovered its pristine Prosperity.

A new Rebellion.

In the Year 1669, *Muscovy* was involved in another Rebellion raised by one *Stephen Ratzin*.

He was a *Dunensian Cofack* by Birth, and having observed a certain Disposition in the *Nagaian Tartars*, inhabiting the Kingdom of *Casan* and *Astrachan*, by Reason of the heavy Oppressions they groaned under, by the Mismanagement and Avarice of the *Muscovite* Governours in those Parts, to shake off the *Russian* Yolk, he gathered a considerable Party, and being assisted by a good Number of his Fellow *Cofacks* inhabiting betwixt the *Dun* and the *Wolga*, he marched at the Head of them to besiege the City of *Astrachan*, which, after some small Resistance, was surrendered into his Hands. From thence he marched towards *Casan*, threatening not only that City, but also the Southern *Muscovy* with a most dreadful Invasion, his Army increasing prodigiously by the vast Number of *Tartars* that flock'd in to his Assistance.

But instead of improving this Opportunity to his Advantage, he gave himself to Idleness and all manner of Debauchery, whereby the *Muscovites* having got Leisure to draw together their Forces to stop the Current of his Victories, They were so expeditious as to arrive near *Casan*, before *Ratzin* could lay Siege to the Place, and having thus cut off all Communication with the Country thereabouts, from whence *Astrachan* and the adjacent Parts are supplied with Corn, the rebellious Army was soon reduced to great Straights for want of Provisions; so that the *Tartars*, being apprehensive of their approaching Danger, left their Leader for the most part.

Notwithstanding which, the *Cofacks* stood it out bravely, resolving to maintain their Ground against the *Muscovites*. For which purpose they having entrenched themselves under the Walls of *Astrachan*, The *Muscovites* seeing the desperate Resolution of the *Cofacks*, thought it most advisable to reduce them, if possible, to Obedience, rather by fair Means, ( and a promise of Pardon for what was  
past

past than by force of Arms. This had the desired Effect: For *Ratzin*, finding his *Cosacks* wavering, upon the Perswasions of some of his Friends in the Czar's Court (who gave him great Hopes of his Pardon) surrendered himself to the Mercy of Czar *Alexis Michaelovits* in the next following Year.

His Party being thus deprived of their Head, readily embraced the Czar's Offers; but *Ratzin* himself, not long after, found himself extremely mistaken in his Hopes; for he was carried to the great Market-place before the Castle, where he had first his Arms and Legs, and afterwards his Head cut off in the Presence of an infinite Number of People, who flocked thither to be Spectators of the tragical Exit of him, whom not many Month before they had looked upon as their most dreadful Enemy.

About the same time *Maria* the Empress Regent departed this Life, and Czar *Alexis Michaelovits* was married soon after to another young Lady, the Niece of *Oatomon Sergoivits*, who having by this near Alliance with the Emperor obtained the whole Ministry of the Government, acquired himself with great Applause and to the General Satisfaction of the People in this eminent Station, till the year 1675. When Czar *Alexis Michaelovits* died, to the great Regret of his Subjects, who by Reason of his great Clemency, singular Devotion, and incomparable Conduct during the last Years of his Reign, lamented his Loss, by all the Expressions of Grief due to the Memory of so great a Prince.

He left behind him, by the first Adventure, two Sons and a Daughter, to wit, *Fedor*, *John*, or *Ivan*, and *Sophia*; by the second, one Son, called *Peter*, the same who now sways the Scepter of the *Miscovian* Empire.

He was succeeded by *Fedor Alexioivits*, his Eldest Son, being not quite Seventeen years of Age, and of a very Sickly Constitution, who reigned seven



Fedor Alexio-  
vits  
dies.

Years under the Protectorate of *Sophia* his Sister, till the year 1682, when by his Death the *Muscovite* Empire was divided into two potent Factions, which might have proved of very dangerous Consequence, if the extraordinary Conduct of his present Czarish Majesty had not in a great Measure diverted the fatal Blow which seemed to threaten its Ruin.

## CHAP. V.

Containing an historical Account of the most remarkable Transactions, from the Beginning of the Reign of the present Czar Peter, till this time; with some political Reflections on the present State of *Muscovy*, in Relation to its Traffick, and Strength, in reference to its Neighbours.

Two Fac-  
tions after  
his Death.

Czar Pe-  
ter crown-  
ed.

AFTER the Death of *Fedor Alexio-  
vits*, John the second Son of *Alexis Michaelovits* being, by Reason of his natural Infirmities, incapable of undertaking the Administration of the Government, was soon prevailed upon to resign all his Claim to the *Russian* Crown, to his younger Brother *Peter*, who, tho' very young, being looked upon by most of the Boyars as the only Person who gave them all the imaginable Hopes of his future Ability to supply the Place of his Father *Alexis Michaelovits*, was crowned Czar of *Muscovy*, instead of the deceased *Fedor*, his Brother.

But the Princess *Sophia*, seeing her self thus excluded from the Management of the Government, of which she had enjoyed the full Advantage during the Minority of her Brother *Fedor*, she with  
Knez

Knez *Galizin* and some others of her Creatures took a Resolution not to part with so fine a Morfel at so easie a Rate, but to endeavour, by putting *John* in the Throne, to maintain their own Greatness, in Opposition to the New Czar *Peter Alexio-vits*.

It is to be observed, that the deceased Empress *Maria*, Mother to *John*, who had by his own Consent debarred himself from the Royal Dignity, was infinitely beloved by the Common People, by reason of her extraordinary Modesty, Charity, and other most eminent Vertues; The Princess being not ignorant of this Advantage on her side, sent abroad her Emisaries, who insinuated into the People the Injustice done to *John* the eldest surviving Son of the Empress *Maria*, the Darling of the People, by an adverse Party, who contrary to the antient established Custom of *Muscovy*, had excluded that Prince from his Right in favour of his younger Brother.

These cunning Informations had such powerful Influence over the Common people, but especially over the Guards that constantly attend the Czar's Person, that one Morning being headed by some of the Princesses Creatures, they rose in open Rebellion, declaring, they would not lay down their Arms, till they saw *John* the Elder Brother of *Peter*, placed on the *Muscovian* Throne.

The Boyars in the Interest of the present Czar *Peter*, endeavouring by their Persuasions to appease the Mutiny, did feel the dreadful Effects of their Fury; for some had their Palaces ransack'd and pull'd down to the ground, others were cut to pieces immediately, others thrown out of the Windows; so that nothing less than a total Destruction seem'd to threaten the City of *Musco*, unless prevented by some Expedient, which might stay the Fury of the enraged Populace. For which reason, the Heads of both Factions (who by this time began equally to dread the Intendency of the Rabble) after various Debates, came to this following Resolution:

## The Antient and Present State

olution: That, to ballance the Interest of both contending Parties, Czar *Peter* should be confirmed in the Throne of *Muscovy*, but that his elder Brother *John* should be his Associate, both in the Royal Dignity and Administration of the Government.

The Princess *Sophia*, having thus once more by the powerful Influence she had over the weakness of her Brother *John*, and by reason of the tender Age of the present Czar *Peter* (he being not above twelve years of Age, when he was Crown'd Czar of *Muscovy*) got the Reins of the Government into her own hands, managed all Matters under the Conduct of the Premier Minister, *Knez Gallizin* (her Creature) with a great deal of dexterity for some time, till at last by the removal of this her faithful Councillor, being deprived of his Assistance, and the Death of her own Brother, Czar *John* (who died about four years ago without Issue) she was totally excluded from the further Management of publick Affairs, and thrust into a Monastery, where she is detained to this day.

A Conspiracy  
against  
the present  
Czar.

The present Czar *Peter* was born on the 29th of *May*, in the Year 1670, by a second Adventure, and after the Death of Czar *Fedor* his eldest Brother, Crown'd Czar of *Muscovy*, when he was not full twelve Years of Age. After the removal of *Knez Gallizin* from the Ministry, and the death of his Brother, the whole Administration of the Government being devolved to him, he managed it with so much Conduct and Success, as has rendred his Actions famous throughout all *Europe*; which those of the contrary Faction looking upon with an envious Eye, a Design was laid some few years ago, against his Life, which in all likelihood would have proved fatal to this great Prince, if by the Imprudence of him, who was to have been the Chief Actor in this Tragedy, the whole Design had not been discovered before the Conspirators could meet

meet with an opportunity to put it in execution.

This was a *German* by Birth, whose name was *Sickler*, who having a considerable Command in the Czar's Army, and being extreamly beloved by him, had a free Access to his Person. This Man being inticed by the hopes of extraordinary Rewards (even of the Crown of *Muscovy*) undertook to dispatch the Czar the first favourable Opportunity that should present, and had certainly executed his Design, if the Contests that arose among the Conspirators concerning the Succession in the Throne, had not delay'd the Execution of it.

*Sickler* in the mean while, who was a good Bottle-Companion, having utter'd some Words to a Friend of his at several times, relating to their intended Project, he conceived so much a horror at it, that he was resolv'd to discover, what he had heard *Sickler* say concerning the Conspiracy; But knowing him to be in great favour with the Czar, he was not without reason afraid, that his Depositions might be interpreted by the adverse Faction, as proceeding from Envy or Malice, and consequently, instead of serving his Prince, turn to his own destruction, he resolv'd to proceed with as much caution as possibly he could in a Matter of so much Moment.

For which purpose having one day met a certain Gentleman, an intimate Friend of his and of *Sickler*; and not questioning, but that he had made use of the same Expressions to him, in relation to the Conspiracy, as he had heard him say at several times in his presence; he began to enter upon a Discourse of their common Friend *Sickler*, and in a careless Manner to repeat several Passages, which he had received from *Sickler's* own Mouth. His Friend being not a little surpris'd at the Imprudence of his Friend, told him, that indeed he had heard him say several times many things of that Nature;

OUT \



## The Antient and Present State

but looking upon them as the Effects of strong Liquor, he never made any further account of them. But the other replying, that the Concealment of Matters of such a nature might one time or another prove their Destruction; and that therefore, he was fully resolved not to hide it any longer, they went by joint-consent to make their Discovery to the Czar in Person.

Plot discovered against the Czar.

He was just then at a Wedding in the Suburbs, where the *Germans*, and other Christian Foreigners have their Habitations, when being informed of the most imminent danger that threatned his Life, he went immediately, accompany'd by his Guards, and some of his most trusty Boyars to the House of *Sickler*, and looking upon him with a stern Countenance, after having asked him some general Questions, and among others; *What Punishment ought to be inflicted upon a Person who should not only betray, but murder his Friend in cold Blood*; and the sudden Change of his Countenance and his confused Answer, sufficiently betraying the Guilt of his Conscience, he caused him to be seized, and being confronted with his two Friends, who had made the Discovery, he confessed the whole Design, and received the due reward of his Treachery, being broken alive upon the Wheel.

Description of the present Czar.

As to the present Czar's Person, he is of a Noble Aspect, his Face being of an Oval Figure, with very large Eyes, and well Featured; his Hair of a light brown Colour, his Complexion inclining to brown but very clear; he is slender but very strong and well-set, being above six Foot high, and tho' in his whole demeanour there appears a great deal of Majesty; yet is his Conversation full of an engaging Familiarity, without the least appearance of Pride even to the meanest of his Subjects; but his chief delight is in the Conversation of Strangers, with whom he will at certain Times converse no otherwise than if they were

were his Equals, and be very frolicksome in their Company.

Thus he did some Years ago in the River of *Arch-Angel* with some *English* Merchants, and a Captain of a Ship belonging to the *Russian* Company. This Ship, called the *Perry and Lane*, carrying 30 Guns, arrived in the Year 1694, in the beginning of *July* in the River of *Arch-Angel*, at the same time, that the present Czar was come thither to take a view of a new Man of War, which he had caused to be bought for his Service in *Holland*.

The Emperour having some days after, invited himself on Board the said Captain, he came accordingly at 3 a Clock in the Afternoon, with 40 or 50 of his Attendance, where he passed away his Time so pleasantly, that he did not depart till next Morning after Sun rise.

The next day he invited the Captain, all the *English* Merchants, and Masters of Ships, to dine with him at a House in an adjacent Illand, where being seated at the same Table with the Emperour, he, after Dinner was over, caused them all to be wetted with an Engine brought lately from *Holland*; Which done, he made them all, without the least distinction of Age or Quality, to plunge themselves over Head and Ears into the River, he in his Person leading the Way, and shewing by his own Example, what they had to do.

Having dismissed them for that time, they were invited again a few days after to the same Illand, where they all play'd at Nine-Pins and Bowls till Night, when expecting the Czar's Orders to depart, he told them that they must stay with him till the Wind turn'd fair; so that they were forced to stay two days and nights, during which time they spent the days in Merriment, and a few hours in the Nights upon the hard Boards; when the Wind veering about, they got leave to depart, and set Sail for *England*.

As he takes great delight in the Company of Strangers, so he makes use most commonly of foreign Habits, even in his own Country ; which the present Patriarch of *Muscovy* looking upon as not agreeable to their own Customs, took the opportunity, when he met the present Czar one day at his Mothers Palace, then lying upon her Death-bed, to tell him in her Presence, That the Czars his Predecessors used always to endeavour to maintain the good Will of their Subjects, by accommodating themselves to their most antient Customs, and to appear in the same Habit with their Subjects ; To which the Czar made answer : *Father, are you not the Head of the Muscovian Church ; to which he having reply'd, yes Sir, by your Favour ? the Czar said, and why then turn you the Head and Advocate of the Taylors ? I intend to give my Subjects more substantial Proofs of the care I take for their Welfare, than what depends from the imaginary Differences of Dresses or Cloaths.*

But a Priest of his Attendance did not come at so cheap a Rate in the *Hague* ; For the Czar, having been informed, that all the Day of the proclaiming of the Peace he got excessively drunk, laid this Penance upon him, to wit, to be employed in twisting of Ropes for many days together, which having cut the poor Fellows Hand to the Bones, gave the Priest an experimental Proof of the Cruelties they sometimes with so much freedom exercise upon the Laity.

*The Czar's  
Journey.*

The present Czar's Journey into those Parts at a time when he is engaged in a heavy War against the *Crim Tartars*, and his Presence seems to be absolutely necessary to suppress the Designs of a potent adverse Faction, has been the Wonder of all *Europe* ; But it is to be observed, that by the seasonable Discovery of the last Conspiracy by the thrusting the Princess *Sophia* into a Monastery, and the removal of the Knez *Galizin* from the Ministry into *Siberia*, the Faction, that

that hitherto opposed his Interest, has been sufficiently discouraged from making further Attempts against a Prince, who by his singular Clemency and the great Success of his Arms against the *Tartars*, is now become the Darling of the common People.

Besides which, he took all the Precaution imaginable before his Departure, to disappoint the Designs of his Enemies, if perhaps in his Absence they should have a mind to try their Fortune.

For which Reason he not only committed the whole Management of the Government to such as he knew absolutely devoted to his Interest, but also sent a great Number of Persons of the first Quality (the Sons of the most Antient Nobility) to travel into far distant Countries, to instruct themselves in the Mathematicks, the Art of Navigation and other useful Sciences, for a certain Term of Years; where they might both improve their own Knowledge to the Advantage of their Native Country, and at the same time serve him as Pledges of their Parents Fidelity during his Stay in foreign Countries.

The Motive which could induce so great a Prince to leave for some time his Native Country, cannot be attributed to any other Cause than his most ardent Desire of improving his own Knowledge and of his Subjects, quite contrary to what has been practised by his Predecessors, who looked upon the Ignorance of their Subjects as the main Foundation-Stone of their Absolute Power; from whence the most clear-sighted promise themselves great Advantages after his Return into *Muscovy*.

Thus



Thus much is unquestionable, that his Desire of improving himself in the Art of Navigation and all Sea-Affairs, is such as to surpass the industry of most private Men, who apply themselves to it out of a bare Prospect of Lucre.

I have heard it related by very credible Persons, that he would not only go frequently to *Sordam* (a large Village on the opposite Shore of the City of *Amsterdam*, on the same River) most inhabited by Shipwrights employed there in the building of Ships, in Disguise, on purpose to instruct himself in every thing belonging to that Trade; But he used often to go disguised in a Sea-man's Habit into the Yard of the *East-India* House, where he would be employed in fetching and carrying such Materials as are requisite for the building of Ships, which he would see put in their proper Places, and oftentimes would employ himself in working in concert with the Shipwrights.

It is by this incredible Desire of accomplishing himself in this, as well as all other useful Arts and Sciences, that he has so improved his Judgment, as to be able to examine and inform himself concerning all Matters relating to Military Affairs, whether by Sea or Land; both which he endeavours to improve, far beyond whatever was attempted by any of his Predecessors, which is sufficiently apparent by the intended communication betwixt the two Rivers, *Volga* and *Tanais*, and the discovery of *Nova Zembla* not to be an Island, as it has been hitherto believed; and the *Mare Glaciale* of the Frozen Sea, to be nothing else but a *Sinus* or Bay, which was performed by His Czarish Majesty's express Orders, within these few Years.

And

And as the prosperous success of his Arms against the *Crim-Tartars* seems to be a convincing instance, that his generous endeavours have not proved fruitless, to the design of extending his Conquest to the Black Sea, gives the *Muscovites* all the hopes imaginable of seeing their Empire in a few Years, a more flourishing condition than ever it has been in under the Reigns of their former Monarchs; of which the great Atchievements of this brave Prince, which are the Subject of the following relations, seems to be the happy presages.

But before we go any further, it will not be beyond our purpose to insert here the true character of *Knez GalliZin*, together with two remarkable Accidents, which seem'd to be the forerunners of his ensuing downfall: which caused no small change in the Affairs of the *Muscovite* Government.

*Knez GalliZin* descended from the Race of the *Zagellons*, was at that time one of the most considerable Princes of the *Muscovian* Empire, whether in regard of his illustrious Extraction, or the high Station he was settled in, of being Chief Minister of State, by the favours of the eldest Czar *John*, and his Sister *Sophia*, who's Creature he was. He was undoubtedly one of the best Head pieces in the Kingdom, and the most Knowing, and most Accomplish'd of all the *Muscovian* Boyars, always addicted to the *French* Interest, and such an admirer of the present *French* King *Lewis XIV.* that he caused his Son to wear his Picture constantly upon his Breast. It was chiefly owing to his advice and dexterity, that the Princess *Sophia* had seized upon the Administration of the Government during the Minority of the two Czars, her Brothers, in which she continued for several Years, by the extraordinary Conduct of this her faithful Minister, till the Boyars and Chief of the Nobility, who were altogether in the Interest of the Youngest Czar *Peter* the present Emperour, being resolved not to suffer themselves any longer to be Imposed upon by this Favourite, found means to remove  
P him

## The Ancient and Present State

him from his Ministry, of which the two following relations appeared to be the Fatal Presages.

The first was undertaken by a private person, who having watched his opportunity one morning as Gallizim was going in his Sledge to the Czar's Palace, threw himself upon him, and seized him by the Beard to stab him. But whilst he was drawing his dagger which (according to the *Muscovian* fashion) stuck in his Girdle, the Princes Servants running up to the Sledge, had the good fortune to stop his hand, just as he was about sticking the Dagger in their Master's Heart.

The Affassin was so far from being dejected, that on the contrary his rage seemed to be encreased, which sufficiently appeared by his furious looks, and his utmost, tho' vain efforts, of putting his design in Execution; But finding himself overpowered, and all his endeavours in vain, he spoke to Gallazim with unparrallell'd resolution, in the following manner: *Infamous Tyrant, It is not the fear of death, but the regret I feel of being disappointed in my design, that you see me thus changed in my Countenance; But know, that tho' I have been so unfortunate as to fail in this attempt, to deliver my Native Country from the most horrid Monster that ever was bred upon the face of the Earth; tho' this hand has been unsuccessful in making thee a Sacrifice to the just resentments of thy fellow Subjects; Know, I say, that this feat is reserved for some happier hand than mine, and that among three hundred Citizens, who, out of pity to the people, that daily groan under the burthen of thy most intolerable oppressions, have conspired thy final destruction; there will be some, that will take surer measures than I have done.*

He was going on in his discourse, if he had not been dragged away immediately to Prison, where after having been put to the Rack, he was executed privately, for fear of incensing the people.

This Outrage was soon after followed by another; less dangerous in its Contrivance, but sufficient

ciently convincing to *GalliZin* of the Sentiments the people had of his Ministry.

He was then just upon his departure for the Army, which he was to Command, as General, against the *Crim Tartars*, when one night a covered Coffin was found at his Pallace Gate, with a Note in it, containing these Words: *GalliZin, Unless the Campaign which thou art now going to open, prove more successful than the former, we are resolved to make sure work with thee.*

The worst of all was, that these menaces proved true in the Event; for, after his return from the Army, he was so closely press'd upon by the rest of the Boyars, that not being able to justify himself against the manifold miscarriages laid to his charge, he was dismissed from all his Employments at Court, his Estate Confiscated, and he banished into *Siberia*, where he was forced to lead a miserable, or rather shameful life.

*GalliZin*  
banished.

Much about the same time Prince *Archilla*, King of *Iveria* and *Mengrelia*, who had for some Years last past lived with his Princess in the Court of the two Czars, was preparing for his return into his Kingdoms. This Prince being originally a *Georgian* by Birth, had been prevailed upon to embrace Mahometism, for the peaceable enjoyment of the two Kingdoms of *Iveria* and *Mengrelia*, which border upon *Persia*.

The Chan of *Persia*, who's Vassal he was, and to purchase whose favour he had changed his Religion, was very favorable to him at first; and tho' he not long after return'd to the *Christian* Religion, which he profess'd before, did not use him with the same severity as he did the rest of the Petty Princes, that were his Vassals. But this seeming kindness of his, proceeded, (as it appear'd afterwards) not so much from any inclinations he had for his person, as the Beauty of his Princess. For having received great recommendations of the excellency of her Person, as he was insatiable in his Lust to Women, so, tho' he never had seen her, he was

Prince  
*Archilla*.



## The Ancient and Present State

resolved to purchase the enjoyment of so much Beauty at any rate; so that he made this unfortunate Prince sufficiently sensible that he had no longer any regard for his person; being now become no less troublesome to him, than he had appear'd kind before.

His first endeavours were carried on by fair means, by vast promises, and hopes of great Rewards, but these proving insufficient to obtain his desire, he proceeded from mildness to Threats, but finding these also not to have the desired effect, he had recourse to open Violence; ordering his forces to advance into the Territories of *Archilla*, to seize him and his Princess, and carry them prisoners to his Court.

*Archilla*, dreading the indignation of the Chan, who's Forces he was not strong enough to oppose, was obliged to seek for safety in his flight, and retired with the Princess to the utmost confines of this Kingdom of *Iveria*, which being the most distant from *Persia*, border upon the *Turkish* Territories, on that side towards the Black Sea; in hopes to shelter themselves there against the forces of their enemies. But the Chan of *Persia* resolved not to quit his pretension at that rate, found means to engage the *Turkish* Grand Scignior in his Quarrel, who having sent some forces to seize the Prince, they surprised and carried him to a Castle under the jurisdiction of the *Turks*, on the borders of *Iveria*, where he was detained Prisoner till further orders.

They had shewn so much favour to the Princess, whom they were unwilling to use with violence that they had not detained her person; But she being exasperated to the highest degree, by the outrages committed upon her husband, retired secretly into *Iveria*, where without any further delay, having assembled some Gentlemen, the bravest and most trusty among her Subjects, she, like another *Amazon*, marched at the head of them to the Relief of her husband.

The Garrison had got some intelligence of her approach some hours before her arrival near the place, wherefore having prepared themselves for a resolute defence, the *Iberians* met with a stout resistance. But being encouraged by the presence and example of their Princess, who was resolved either to deliver her Husband, or to fall in the attempt; they at last forced the Castle where their Prince was kept Prisoner, in spite of all the resistance the Soldiers could make, carried him off, and set him at Liberty.

So soon as they had time to reflect upon their present condition, they were sufficiently sensible that an act so extraordinary, and so bold, must needs draw upon them the indignation of both these Great Princes, their Neighbours, and that consequently they could not tarry long with safety in their Kingdoms, encompassed as it was, on all sides, by their enemies: Therefore they were forced to abandon their Subjects to the mercy of these two Potent Neighbours, and with some of their most trusty friends to seek for shelter in *Muscovy*.

They were received with all the demonstrations of friendship by the two Czars, who assign'd them a Palace in the City of *Musco*, and during the space of three Years allowed them a Pension suitable to their Quality, till their Subjects having composed matters with the Grand Seignior, and become weary of the *Persian* yoke, solicited their return into the Kingdoms of *Iveria* and *Mangrelia*, promising to Sacrifice all what was dear to them for their Interest, against the *Persians* their common enemies.

The same Year the Youngest of the two Czars, (the same who lately honoured this Kingdom with his presence) married the Daughter of an Officer of the Army. He was then but Eighteen Years of Age, and a few days after the marriage was published by the sound of the great Bell in *Musco* (perhaps the finest in the World) he was seized with the falling Sickness.

Prince Ar.  
chilla a-  
rives in  
Muscovy.

The pres-  
ent  
Czar mar-  
ries.

Those who did not know this distemper to be Hereditary to his Family, but were sufficiently acquainted with those frequent misfortunes that happen in *Muscovy*, to persons of a high Rank at the time of their marriages; occasioned by the Envy of the contending Rivals of the Female Sex, looked upon it as an effect of the Jealousie of such families as being by this marriage excluded from the hopes of that Alliance they had aspired to, had let their vengeance fall upon their young Prince. But this accident not being attended with any further ill Consequences, these Rumors were soon dispersed, and the rejoycings continued to the Great Satisfaction of the *Muscovites*, who had placed the chief hopes of their future prosperity in the Activity and Courage of a Prince, who soon after gave them such evident proofs of his great ability in the art of Government, that they were satisfied their hopes would not fall short of their expectation, especially when the Czaritza within a twelve Month after, brought forth a Young Prince, who being now about Eight Years of Age, gives all the imaginable hopes, of being one day the inheritor of his Father's Vertues and Dominions.

For after the Removal of *Gallizim*, having taken the Reins of the Government into his own hands, and consequently suppress'd that Faction which hitherto had in a measure oppos'd his Greatness, he began to lay the foundation towards the accomplishment of these designs, which within these few Years last past have been the Admiration of all *Europe*, and caused Terror to his Enemies.

The unfortunate War in which the *Turks* were engaged against the Emperour, *Poles* and *Venerians* having sufficiently disenabled them to send any considerable Succours to the *Crim Tartars*, the hereditary Enemies of *Muscovy*, which has so often felt the direful effects of their barbarous Cruelties, the present juncture of time was look'd upon as the most favourable to reduce these troublesome Neighbours under

*The War against the  
Crim Tartars.*

der the Obedience of the *Russian* Empire. For which purpose a considerable Army having been brought into the field, the Siege of *Asaph* was resolved on, which City being seated at the mouth of the River *Don* or *Tanais*, where it discharges itself into the *Palus Mæotides*, or the Sea of *Zabacche*, is the Inlet into the lesser *Tartary*, and consequently facilitates the Conquest of the *Crim Tartars*, inhabiting the *Taurica Chersonesus*. The *Muscovites* attack'd the City very vigourously, but being destitute of Shipping, and not sufficiently provided with good Canoneers, they could not hinder the *Turks* from bringing in at several times fresh supplies of Men, Ammunition and other necessaries, whereby they were obliged at the approach of the Winter Season to raise the Siege for that time.

But the Czar was so far from being discouraged by this retreat, that he resolved to repair this disgrace, and to make himself master of the place, let it cost what it will. For which purpose having order'd a considerable number of Ships to be built, and mann'd, to prevent their Communication with the Sea, and obtained a good number of Engineers, Bombardeers, and Canoneers from the Emperour, *Venerians*, Elector of *Brandenburgh*, and some other Christian Princes; he resolved to take the field in person in the ensuing year, so soon as the Rivers should become Navigable, and to open the Campaign with the Siege of *Asaph*.

Pursuant to this resolution having ordered a vast Besiege. Train of Artillery, consisting of 400 Pieces of Cannon, and 150 Mortars, to be got ready, he Marched with a very numerous Army, commanded under him by his Favourite, the General and Admiral *Le Fort*, (the Chief of the Ambassy, now in *Holland*) by *Mr. Gourdon*, a *Scotchman*, and *Afranou Nichelouits*, a *Muscovite*, and laid close Siege to the said City, whilst his Fleet guarded the Port, and prevented any Supplies from coming to their Relief that way; and the *Cosack* Generals *MaZepa*, and



and *Paley*, advanced in two distinct Bodies towards the *Boristhenes*, to give a powerful diversion to the *Crim Tartars* on that side.

Takes A-  
soph by  
con-ju-  
sion.

The *Tartars* within defended themselves for some time with bravery enough, notwithstanding the great havock made by the *Muscovite* Bombs, under the direction of the Foreign Bombardiers, but finding themselves disappointed in their hopes of Relief by Sea (the *Muscovites* having defeated those that came to their Assistance) they beat a parley, and Surrendered themselves, upon certain Articles, to the *Czar*.

After the taking of *Asoph*, he advanced to *Karikeumen*, which, by the force of his Bombs, he soon obliged to Surrender at discretion. All the Castles and Places thereabouts, underwent the same fate, most of which he caused to be demolish'd, unless it was *Taran*, where he left a very good Garrison,

Enters  
Mosco i.  
Triumph.

The same Summer the *Cosacks* had made themselves Masters of several Strong Forts on the *Boristhenes*, which may in time much facilitate the taking of *Preecop*, Scituate at the very entrance of the *Taurica Cherisonesus*. The *Czar* after the Conquest of a place so considerable for its Situation, was received at his return by his Subjects inhabiting the City of *Musco*, with all the demonstrations of joy, and other Honours due to a Conquerour: For at his Entrance there were Triumphal Arches erected, representing the Conquests of *Asoph*, and other places taken by him the Summer before: And as he went through the City to the Castle, he was preceded by the General *Le Fort* in a Litter, and by General *Gourdon* on Horse back.

But what was most pleasing to the People, was the Leading in Triumph of a certain noted Deserter, who's name was *Jacob*. He being taken at the Surrender of *Asoph*, was brought into *Muscovy*, and to compleat the Show, was placed upon a high Waggon, Seated under a Gibber, upon which he was hanged the next day after this Solemn Entry.

His

His next care was to send an Envoy to the Court of *Vienna*, not only to give an exact account of the Success of his Arms against the Infidels, but more particularly to enter into a more strict Alliance, with the rest of the Confederates, against the *Turks*: And having received certain intelligence, that the *French* Ambassador in *Poland*, was labouring for the advancing of the Prince of *Consi* to the *Polish* Crown, he gave the *Polish* Nobility to understand by his Minister Resident in *Poland*, that in case they should advance the Prince of *Consi*, or any other *Frenchman* to the Throne, they must expect to be treated as Enemies, he looking upon the *French* Nation, joyned in Alliance with the *Turks*, to stand in opposition to the General Interest of Christendom.

In the mean while the Negotiation at *Vienna*, concludes concerning the Alliance against the Infidels went on with good Success the main Scruple to be removed, being about the time of the Continuance of this Alliance, and which the *Muscovites* desired to be for Seven Years, whereas the Emperor and the *Venetians* insisted to have it continued for no longer than three Years. But the Czar having sent new Instructions to his Envoy, with full power to conclude the said Negotiation according to the Proposals made by the rest of the Confederates, all things were at last agreed on to the Satisfaction of all the parties concerned in the Alliance, and the Treaty was Sign'd and Ratifi'd at *Vienna*, in the Presence of the *Venetian* Resident, containing besides several others, these three following Articles.

That the Alliance shall last three Years, at least, reserving to the Parties concerned, the power to renew it, after that time is expired, if they think fit.

That none of the Parties shall make Peace, without the Knowledge and Consent of the other.

And Lastly; that in Case the Enemy shall make any Proposals of Peace to any one of the Confederates, the same shall be imparted to all the rest.

After

## The Ancient and Present State

After the Conclusion of this Alliance the Emperour appointed a Minister to Reside with the Czar, and to attend him in the Field, to be an eye witness of what passed in the *Muscovite* Army, and to give the Emperour from time to time an account of their Progress against the *Tartars*.

The noise of this Alliance, and the great preparations made by the Czar against the next ensuing Campaign, struck such a terror to the *Tartar Chan*, that he dispatch'd frequent Messengers to *Constantinople*, to Solicite Prompt and Powerful Succours against the *Muscovites*, who were preparing to invade the *Crim Tartary*, and by the Conquest of the City of *Precop*, to make themselves Masters of the *Taurica Cherfenesus*.

These Remonstrances had such an influence over the Ottoman Port, that they promised them considerable Assistance, and it was given out, that the Grand Seignior intended to go in person against the *Muscovites*; and tho' the last proved to be only a Contrivance to amuse the Enemy, yet the *Turks* being in the next Campaign deprived of the Succours they generally used to receive from these *Tartars*, did in a great Measure attribute their last defeat to the want of these Auxiliaries, who, by their number, used to stand them in no small stead against the Imperial Cavalry.

But whilst all Europe waited in expectation to hear of the advance of his Czarish Majesty at the head of a very formidable Army, towards the *Crim Tartars*, they were agreeably Surprised with the news of a great and Splendid *Muscovian* Ambassady arrived in *Prussia*, where the Czar was in person, but incognito. This news, which at first carried along with it but little probability, was put beyond question after they had been received with so much Solemnity by his Electoral Highness of *Brandenburg* at *Konigsbergh*, the Capital of the Ducal *Prussia*.

The Chief of the Ambassy was *Francis Jacolovits Le Fort*, whom we have mentioned before, with whom

whom were joyned as Colleagues *Mexievits Holwin*, *Damnos Diat Precophei*, and *Bodanovits Wor-* *The Mus-*  
*nitzien*. Being arriv'd early in the morning at *covite*  
*Laut*, about a mile distant from *Konigsbergh*, with *Ambassa-*  
 a Train of betwixt three and four Hundred Persons, *dors En-*  
 the *Sieur Dancelman*, Prime Minister of State, *trance in*  
 and *Mr. Besser*, Master of the Ceremonies, with *Konigs-*  
 a great number of Courtiers, and the Nobility of *burgh.*  
 the Country, were sent by his Electoral Highness,  
 to Complement them in his Name, and Conduct  
 them into the City, where in the afternoon they  
 made their Publick Entrance in the following man-  
 ner. Forty of his Electoral Highnesses best led  
 Horses, with very rich Saddles, and other Accou-  
 tlements, led the way. These were followed by a  
 Single Officer richly clad, attended by the Kettle  
 Drums of the Guard of the Body, three Troops  
 of whom followed immediately after, all clad  
 in Red.

Next to these came Thirty Coaches, drawn with  
 Six Horses each, in which were the Principal No-  
 bility of the Ducal *Prussia*. Then two of his E-  
 lectoral Highnesses Coaches, and one belonging to  
 the Margrave *Albert*. After these were to be seen  
 the Court Pages, clad all in Red, lac'd all over  
 very richly with Gold Lace, riding two and two,  
 with a Page of the Ambassadors betwixt them.

These were followed by Forty more Coaches,  
 with Six Horses each, wherein were the Chief  
 Ministers and Officers of the Electors Household;  
 after whom came the first Kettle Drum and Trum-  
 pet belonging to his Electoral Highness, followed  
 by the Ambassadors Foot Gaurds, clad in Green,  
 with Silver Battle Axes upon their shoulders; and  
 after these the Ambassadors Horse Guards, in the  
 same Livery, but without Battle Axes.

Then came the Coach wherein were the  
 Four Ambassadors; and lastly, the whole Train  
 was clos'd with Twelve Coaches fill'd with *Mus-*  
*covite* and *Brandenburgh* Gentlemen.



The Streets thro' which their Excellencies passed to the *Knipbaff*, (where most Magnificent Lodgings were prepared for them,) were lined with the Burghers, who were drawn up in a double file. They were received at their Lodgings by the Garrison of the City, and saluted with a treble discharge of all the Cannon round the Fortifications, and being thus conducted to their Apartments, the *Sieurs Danckelman* and *Besser* took their leave of them, being waited on by the Ambassadors to the Stairs of the House.

Have their  
Audience.

Some days after, being the 25. of May, they had their Publick Audience of his Electoral Highness, being again conducted by the abovementioned *Sieur Danckelman*, and *Besser* the Master of the Ceremonies, being followed by a Train of Thirty odd Coaches. Before the Ambassadors Coach went Thirty Persons, carrying the Czars Presents to the Elector, consisting in Tables, Ermins, and other Rich furs, beside a good quantity of *Indian* and *Persian* Silks, Stuffs, and Tissues of Gold, and Silver; valued in all at 20000 *l*. Sterling. The Ambassadors themselves were most richly dress'd, their Habits being of Cloth of Gold and Silver, covered with rich Embroidery, and abundance of Pearls and precious Stones. They pass'd thro' the Electors Guards, which was placed on both sides up to the Great Hall of the Castle, where the Elector, attended by the Nobility, and all the Officers of his Household, was Seated under a Canopy of State.

The Ambassadors having made the usual reverences, every one in his turn, complemented his Electoral Highness, and after having delivered the Presents, they presented a Letter containing in Substance; That his Czarish Majesty had sent these (abovenamed) Persons, as his Ambassadors, to his Electoral Highness, to give him all the possible assurances of his desire to improve the Affection and good Correspondence, which always had been between them, and their Illustrious Ancestors That  
this

this Ambassy, being intended, to proceed from hence to several other Courts in Christendom, in order to concert Measures, and promote the common Interest of the Confederacy, against the Infidels; his Czarish Majesty did not in the least question, but that the Elector would assist them in so glorious a Work, and forward them in their Journey. The Letter concluded with the thanks from the Great Duke to his Electoral Highness, for the Engineers and Bombardiers, which he had sent sometime before, and which by their extraordinary Skill had been very instrumental in the Siege of *Asoph*, and other places, taken by the *Muscovites* in the *Crim Tartary*.

The Elector answered; That he acknowledged himself much obliged to the Czar, for his assurances of the continuance of his Friendship, and especially for the Splendid Ambassy he had sent to him.

But the *Sieur Danckelman* returned them an answer more at large, and in the Electors Name answered their Complements, in terms so obliging, that the Ambassadors were extremely satisfied with his Generous and Genteel behaviour.

Being afterwards reconducted to their Lodgings in the same manner, they were Treated with a most Splendid Dinner by his Electoral Highness, and were the same Evening, Entertained with variety of extraordinary Fireworks, which lasted, to their no small Satisfaction, till midnight.

Whilst the Czar of *Muscovy*, with his Ambassadors, was on his Journey towards *Holland*, his Army obtain'd a Signal Victory against the *Crim-Tartars*, on the 30th of *July*.

For the *Muscovites* having drawn together their Forces to the number of 70000 Men, most Horse; the *Turks* and *Tartars*, who had received advice of their March, thinking themselves Superior in number and strength to the *Muscovites*, resolved to Attack them before they were joyned by the *Cossacks*.

In order to which they advanced under the Command of *Sultan Galga*, and attacked them with their

ut.

utmost Vigor, but were received by the *Muscovian* Cavalry with so much Resolution, that they were repulsed and driven back in great disorder; but trusting in their number they rallied again, and charged the *Muscovites* with great Fury, till being, after some Hours engagement quite broken, they were forced to quit the Field, being pursued by the Enemy to the River *Kalganski*, where a great slaughter ensued: For being constrained, by the close pursuit of the *Muscovites*, to cross that River with great Precipitation, a great part of their Army not being able to follow the rest, with so much haste as their present danger required, were either cut to pieces, or drowned in the River, or taken Prisoners.

This Victory was the more advantageous to the *Muscovites*, because most of the *Tartars* having been slain in the flight, the loss was not considerable on the *Muscovite* side, for which reason great Rejoycings were made in the City of *Musco*, and all over the Empire.

In the mean while the Embassy was arrived in *Holland*, where they received the first News of this Victory, and made their publick Entry at the *Hague* on the 17th of *September*, in great Splendor.

*The Moscovite Ambassadors make their Entrance at the Hague.*

Before their Excellencies Coaches went a Train of 50 others with 6 Horses each, wherein were the Gentlemen of the Ambassador's Retinue, and other Persons of Quality.

Then came the two Coaches of State, in which rode the Ambassadors, who were followed by three Coaches of their own, which closed the Cavalcade.

*Their Audience.*

After they had passed through the Guards that were placed on both sides of the Court, they were received by two Deputies of the States, in the Out-Room of Audience. Being conducted into the Room of Audience, they were saluted by the whole Body of the States, unto whom they delivered the Czars Letters, directed to their High and Mightinesses, containing assurances of his Affection, and his desire of Cultivating a good Correspondence with the State, desiring their High and Mightinesses to Treat with

with the (above-named) Ambassadors, concerning such matters, as they should propose to them in his Czarish Majesty's Name, to promote the Interest of Christendom against the Infidels.

Then each of the Ambassadors having, in his turn, made a Complemental Speech to the States, and delivered the Czar's Present, which consisted in a great quantity of Sable-skins, of a considerable Value, the Deputies answered them in a very Eloquent Speech, in the Name of the States.

The Ambassadors were entreated to sit down, in Elbow-Chairs set for that purpose, which they having refused, and the whole Assembly judging, not without reason, that this refusal proceeded from the respect they bore to their Sovereign, there present, did also continue in the same posture till the Audience was over, when the Ambassadors were re-conducted, in the same Order as they came, to their Lodgings.

For the better understanding the present condition of the *Russian* Empire, it will be absolutely requisite, before we conclude this Treatise, to add something concerning its Traffick, and present Strength, in relation to its Neighbours; in both which, it must be confessed, the *Muscovites* have improved themselves since the settlement of their Government, after their Intestine Commotions, to the admiration of all those, who have taken the Pains to make a due comparison betwixt their former condition, and the present State of their Empire.

Not to enlarge my self hereupon, the Trade of *Muscovy* depending on the product of the Country, *Muscovy*. such as Pot-ashes, Wax, Honey, Tar, Pitch, Hemp, Flax, Cavier, and Sturgeon, besides a great many other Commodities which are exported from thence into Foreign Countries. It is almost incredible, what advantages the *Muscovites* reap from the *Persian*, *Indian*, and *Chinese* Trade, lately established throughout the whole Empire. The staple of the *Persian*, and *Indian* Trade is chiefly at *Astrachan*, which lying within the Mouth of the River *Volga*, must be considered



sidered as the Frontierplace of the two most considerable parts of the World, to wit, of *Europe*, and *Asia*.

The *Armenians* possess one of the Suburbs of this City by themselves, and drive a vast Trade from thence into *Persia*; but they who without question contribute most to the flourishing condition of this City, and carry on the *Indian* Trade through *Muscovy*, are the *Banjans*, a certain sort of *Indians*, much addicted to Trading, and dispersed all over the great *Mogul's* Territories, but especially inhabiting the Province of *Guzuratte* (by the *Portugueses* called *Cambaya*) who holding a Correspondence all over the *Caspian* Sea, there are few sorts of Merchandizes which do not pass thro' their Hands.

For it is to be observed, that the Province of *Guzuratte* is Inhabited besides *English*, *Dutch*, and *Persians*, by three severalsorts of People by the *Indestans*, the ancient Natives of the Country, an idle and sluggish Generation; by the *Moguls*, who came out of *Grand Tartary*, and are all *Mahometans*, much addicted to Arms, and the *Banjans*, who altogether apply themselves to Manufactory and Traffick. It is true, there is no Province in *India*, where there are not some of these *Banjans*, but in the Province of *Guzuratte* they are more numerous than in other places, and are distinguish'd, especially from those that profess *Mahometism*, by their Habit.

The Ban-  
jans descri-  
bed.

For tho' they do not ware their Hair very long, yet do they not shave their Heads. Their Women don't cover their Faces, as those of the *Mahometans* do; they ware Pendants, and Pearls in their Ears, and Necklaces about their Necks. Black Teeth are amongst them as well as in *Muscovy* in great request, from whence it comes that they nick Name the *Europeans*, who have white Teeth, *Bondra*, that is, *Apes*. They ware no Breeches as the other *Indians*, but only a piece of thin Silk stuff, which is wrapt about them, reaching down to their Hams, over which they ware their Smocks, and on them their upper Garment, which they tie with a Girdle

at the Waste: Some of them wear under these a kind of narrow Waistcoats, the Sleeves whereof reach no further than the Elbow, being naked from the Breasts down to the Navel. They wear Shooes either of Wood, Velvet, Brocade, or gilt Leather, fastned with Straps to their Feet, which they put off when they go into any Room, where the Floor commonly is covered with Tapestry.

They are incomparably more Ingenious, Subtle, and more Civil, than any of the other *Indians*. No People in the World are more given to Writing and casting Accounts than they, and their Conversation is very delightful. There is no Trade in the Great *Turk's* Country, which is not chiefly managed by them, nor any Commodity throughout all the *Indies*, which they do not sell, unless it be Flesh and Fish, or any other Thing that had Life, which they are bound to preserve by the Rules of their Religion, as we shall relate anon.

They Marry their Children at 7, 8, 9, or 10 Years of Age, and it seldom appears that they stay till 12, especially if they be Daughters; for if they should exceed that time, it would be looked upon as Scandalous.

The *Banyan* Widows are not permitted to Marry a second time, even though the Bridegroom should Die before the Consummation of the Marriage; but all the Ornaments are to be taken from her, and her Hair to be cut off immediately after the Husband's Death. Nevertheless they are not obliged to burn themselves with the Dead Bodies of their Husbands, neither are they hindered to do it if they have an inclination thereto. Those Widows in *India*, who cannot dispense with a single Life, get in among the Dancers of that Sex, where they have sufficient opportunity to exercise the Flesh, and to allay the heat which must needs be occasioned in Vigorous Bodies lying in so hot a Climate.

This Barbarous Custom for the Widows to burn themselves with their deceased Husbands, was first introduced into those parts upon a Political account

Q

For

## The Ancient and Present State

For *Polygamy* causing abundance of Heart-burning and Jealousie among the Women that were Rivals in their Husbands Affections, it often happen'd, that such as thought themselves neglected, used frequently to procure their Husbands Deaths. Wherefore to make them to be more careful of their Husbands Lives, it was ordered, that such as were desirous to be accounted honest Women, should be engaged to keep their Husbands company in their Journey to the other World, and be burnt together with their Bodies. So that tho' this obligation of dying with their Husbands was only imposed upon such Women as stood upon the reputation of their Honesty, without any punishment to be inflicted on such as refused to conform themselves to so dreadful a Custom, unless they were not admitted into the Company of Persons of Quality, as being looked upon as Infamous; yet has this principle of Honour been so prevailing upon a vast number of the *Indian* Women, that there are innumerable examples, of such as have sacrificed their Lives upon the Pile which burnt the dead Carcasses of their Husbands.

But as among all the Sects of the *Indians*, there have been Women, who, with the same chearfulness have thrown away their Lives to the memory of their Husbands, as those of the Sect of *Samarath*, whose Perswasion is, that if a Woman hath so great an Affection for her Husband; as to burn her self with him after his Death, she shall live with him in the other World seven times as long, and shall enjoy him with seven times as much satisfaction as she has done in this; it is most probable, that they are induced to this resolution, not altogether by the motive of a Punctillo of Honour, but look on this kind of Death as a Passage, thro' which they are to enter into a beatitude of these Pleasures, whereof they had but a small share in this World.

But to return to our *Banyans*, who having a considerable share in the *Indian* Trade in *Muscovy*, very well deserve our particular description here.

The

The *Banyans*, therefore, are *Pagans*, using neither *Religion of* Baptism nor Circumcision; yet they believe that *the Ban-* there is but one God, Creator and Preserver of the *yans*. Universe. Neither does this perswasion hinder it, that they acknowledge one *Braman*, who they say, is God's Vicegerent, (as they call the great God of all the other Gods *Eruva*) and out of who's Brains, they say, their *Bramans*, or Priests derive their first Being. They are highly respected among the *Banyans*, as well as the other *Pagans* in *India*, not only *Their Bra-* upon the account of their austerity of Life, and *mens*. their extraordinary Abstinence, they fasting sometimes several Days together, scarce eating any thing at all, but also in regard the Education of the Youth is committed to their care, and that they expound the mysteries of their Religion to the ignorant People; so that making what impression they think most convenient for their purpose, on the minds of the superstitious *Indians*, their Words are considered as Oracles; from whence it comes, that the *Banyans* seldom engage in any business of consequence, unless with the Advice and Approbation of the *Braman*.

They are distinguished from the other *Banyans*, only by what they wear upon their Heads, which is a certain Head-dress made of Linnen Cloth, wrapt several times round the Head, to cover their Sacred Hair, which is never cut. Besides which, they wear three pieces of small Packthread next their Skin, which comes cross over the Breast from the Shoulder to the Waist, which Packthreads they never pull off, tho' it were to save their Lives.

Among the *Malataps*, they are looked upon as so Holy, that no Marriage is contracted there, but the first Fruits of the Bride must be Consecrated to the *Braman*, to whom she is brought to be deflour'd, and being thus purified in her lower parts, the Bridegroom may enter without danger. For the cunning Priests have cajoled the poor simple People into a belief, that the Marriage could never be sufficiently Blessed, unless the *Braman* has initiated the



## The Ancient and Present State

Bride with a Sanctifying touch. From whence it comes, that many times he must be very earnestly intreated, before he will undertake the Task; and if the Persons be of any Quality or good Substance, he will scarce be engaged to take of the drudgery from the Bridegroom's Hands, unless he be hired to the Work, and have a good reward for his Pains.

Thus the crafty Priest, by imposing upon the simplicity of his Flock, improves his natural Talent to his utmost Advantage, satisfies at one stroke both his Appetite and Purse, and sells his Benevolence at an excessive price, which a Layman would be glad to bestow generously, for nothing. But this is not all, for if the Priest once gets sure footing in a good place, he is sure not to part with it at an easie rate, but remains a standing Friend to the Family; for the Married Men retain so much kindness ever after for their Copartners, that, if they go any Journey, or upon any occasion are detained from Home, they recommend their whole Family (but especially their Wives) to the care of the *Braman*, while they are absent, to supply their places with them, till they return, which you may be sure the Priest will perform to the utmost of his Power, unless the good Woman happen to be very old or ugly, or he be disabled to do his Office by his long fasting, in which case it is the Woman's business to cherish the Father's languishing Spirits, with powerful Restoratives, at which the *Indian* Women are the most expert in the whole World, as they are very skilful to send their Husbands upon certain occasions, to the enjoyments of the other World.

But to return to the more serious part of their Religion; they hold the immortallity of the Soul, but believe, withal, that at its departure out of the first Body, it transmigrates into that of some other Creature. Thus they affirm, that by example, the Soul of a good natur'd and meek Person, is translated into the Body of a Pidgeon or Chicken; that of a Cruel and Rapacious Fellow into a Crocodile, a  
Lyon

Lyon, or a Tyger; that of a Cunning and Crafty Man, into that of a Fox, That of a Glutton into the body of Swine; that of a Treacherous and Malicious Person into a Serpent, before they are admitted to the enjoyment of Spiritual Beatitude. For which reason it is the *Banyans* abstain as we mentioned before, from killing any living Creatures, even to the Insects, be they never so troublesome or dangerous. Nay they Act with so much Circumspection in regard of all Living Creatures, of what kind soever, that they forbear keeping any fire, and lighting of Candles, in the Night time, out of fear, that the Flies or Moths should chance to burn themselves therein; they scarce can be induced to make any Pits in the ground, for fear of drowning the Slegs and other Insects.

If the Mahometans among them do sell any Birds, they will be sure to redeem them, if possibly they can, and feed them well, because, say they, we don't know, how soon our selves may stand in need of the same kindness; and they will Erect Hospitals for Beasts that are Hurt or Wounded.

They have a more then ordinary respect for Cows, so that if they know of any one that is to be killed for the Market, they will not only purchase and redeem it at a high rate from the slaughter; but there is scarce a family, but what breeds up one, almost as tenderly as their own Children; For they will comb and feed it, and lodge it as cleanly, and as carefully as if it were one of their best Friends or Relations.

They never eat but in private, and before they touch the Victuals, they throw some small quantity of it separately into the Fire, the Water, the Air, and upon the Earth. They have abundance of other pretended niceties, too many to be inserted here; but it ought not to be passed by in silence, that tho' they acknowledge one Supream God, they nevertheless worship the Devil, alledging for a reason, that God having created him to govern

*They wor-  
ship the  
Devil.*

the World, and to do hurt to Mankind, he ought to be appeased by Prayers and Sacrifices.

From whence it is, that his Statues of Gold, Silver, Ivory, Ebony, Marble, Wood or Stone are every where to be seen in their Mosques, the figure of which appears most dreadful to the eyes of the Beholders. For his Head, out of which come forth four Horns is adorn'd with a triple Crown in the shape of a Taira. His Face resembles that of a large Boar, with two great Teeth coming out of his Mouth; and a great ugly Beard on his Chin. He bends his Breast to his Belly, where the Hands hang down negligently. Betwixt his Thighs there appears another Head with two Horns upon it, as ugly as the first, thrusting out of the Mouth, a Tongue of extraordinary bigness. Instead of Teeth it hath Saws, and a Cows Tail behind. This Figure stands always upon a Stone Table, this being the Altar where the offerings are to be made. They have no other light in their Mosque, than what they are furnish'd withall by the Lamps which are kept burning perpetually near the Idol: And after the Priest has finished his Devotions, he purifies his Head, by putting it into these Flames, as the other *Banyans* purify themselves before the Sacrifice, by washing in a Trough, which always stands on the right side of the Altar.

But it being beyond our present Scope, to digress further into the cloudy and Superstitious Rites of these *Banyans*, let us return to their traffick, which seems to be more suitable to our present intencion. These *Banyans* therefore being the most in number throughout the Cities of *Surat*, *Blevishia*, *Gandeer*, *Goga*, *Cambaya*, *Dium*, *Pateppatene*, *Mangalor*, *Gondore*, *Massary*, *Gandivi*, *Balsara*, and in the Metropolis of the Province *Hamed Ewad*, or *Amadabarb*; they manage the whole Trade of *India*, not only in Silks, Cottons, but also all sorts of Proveado's of Gold and Silver, Sattins, Velvets, Taffata's, Sattins for Linings and Carpets, quilted Cover-

Coverlets of Silk or Cotton, Tents, which are used instead of Coaches, Cabinets of Lacque, Chest boards of Tortoise Shell, Seals, Beads, Chains, Buttons and Rings of Ivory, Amber, Rock Christal or Agat.

The other Commodities which by the *Banyans* are transported into *Muscovy* and *Perfia* are, Sugar candy'd or in powder, Cummin, Opium, Ginger, dry and preserv'd Myrobolans or *Indian* Plums, Sal Armonias, Musk, Amber Greece, Lacque, Saltpeter, Indico, Borax, Assafetida, and Diamonds, besides several sorts of other precious Stones.

The Lacque is a Gumm taken out of a certain Tree, not much unlike a Plum Tree, there is a *Lacque, how made.* abundance of it all over the Province of *Guzurette*; its native colour is Red, Brown; But the *Indians* beat it to powder, and after they have given it what colour they please, make it into Sticks, for to Seal Letters, or beattie their Cabinets, and other Household Stuff.

Saltpeter is made in those parts, out of the blackest and Saltest ground in the following manner; having made certain Trenches, they fill them with this Nitrous Earth, and let into them out of the Adjacent small Rivulets, so much water as they think sufficient, for its soaking, which that it may be the more effectually done, they tread it with their feet, till it be well mix'd. When they believe the Water to have drawn out all the Nitrous Substance, which was in the Earth, they take, after it be well settled, the clearest part of it, which they dispose in another Trench, where after some time it grows thick, and then they boil it like Salt continually scumming it. Lastly they put it into a great Earthen pots, where the grossest dregs falling to the bottom, they take of the Saline Substance, which is set a drying in the Sun, till it grows hard, and is reduced into that form, as we see it in *Europe*. *Saltpeter, how made.*

The best Indigo in the World comes from about *Amadabath*, the Capital of the Province of *Guzuratte*, from a Village called *Chirphees*. The Herb *Indigo, how prepared.*



## The Ancient and Present State

out of which that is made, is not unlike that of Yellow Parsnip, but shorter and of a more bitter taste; It sprouts forth to branches like a Reed, growing some Years, when the season proves kind, Six or Seven foot high, with a flower like that of a Thistle, and the seed altogether like Fennugreek. It is seldom sown till in June, and is ready to be cut towards towards the latter end of November, or the beginning of December. They Sow it but once in three Years, but the first year produces the best, when the leaves are cut off within a foot of the ground. The Stalks are thrown away as useless, and the leaves laid a drying in the Sun; which done they are put a put a soaking for four or five days in a Stone Trough, the Water with the leaves is often stirred, till such time that the Water has sufficiently extracted the whole tincture of the Herb. Then the Water is smoothly drawn off into another Stone Trough, in order to let it settle for one night. The next day, all the Water is again drawn off to the settlement, and what is thus left in the bottom of the Troughs, is strained through a course Cloth, and so set a drying in the Sun.

And this is true Indigo, which however the *Banyans* frequently adulterate; by mixing with it a certain Earth of the same Colour. And because the excellency of this Commodity is judged by its lightness, they have cunning enough to add to it some oyl, to make it swim upon the Water. The second year, the Stalk which was left in the ground the year before, shoots forth other leaves, but they are not comparable to those of the first, tho' they much exceed the Wild Indigo. Wherefore they reserve the greatest part of the second Years product for Seed. That of the third Year, is as much inferior in goodness to that of the second, as that is in comparison of that of the first, and being therefore in no esteem among forreign Merchants, is on-made use of in the Country, in dying of their Cloaths. After it hath been in the ground three  
Years.

Years, they let the Land lye fallow for one Year, before they set it again

The *Banyans* in General, are the most crafty Traders in the World, which makes the *Muscovites* (as do also the *English* and *Dutch* in *India*) employ those residing at *Astrachan* and in other parts of the Empire, employ them for their Factors and Hawkers, as being the most likely to discover the cheats of their brethren in *India*. Both the *Banyans* and *Armenians* residing at *Astrachan* are very industrious in keeping a constant correspondence with the *Indians* and *Persians* in their respective Countries, but especially in all the Seaports of the *Caspian Sea*, which by reason of the vast number of Rivers that exonerate themselves into it, rendereth the Commerce with *Persia*, and consequently with the *Insidels* very commodious to the *Muscovites*.

Among others the great City *Gangea*, one of the fairest and best in *Persia*, by reason of its advantageous Situation for trade upon the confluence of several Rivers, and the great Croud of strangers that resort thither on the account of Traffick is frequently visited by the *Muscovian* Factors, the *Banyans* and *Armenians*.

But *Shamachie* is the place, which chiefly furnishes the *Muscovites*, by reason of its nearness to the *Caspian Sea*, with such *Indian* and *Persian* Commodities, as they stand in need of. This City was indeed formerly much bigger than it was now, the greatest part of it having been about twenty Years ago ruin'd by an Earthquake, yet notwithstanding this misfortune it is still very considerable, there being not in all the *Persian* Empire a City, where there is so general a resort of strangers of all Nations, to wit, of *Armenians*, *Banyans*, *Georgians*, *Greeks*, *Turks*, *Circassians* and *Muscovites*; the latter of which have their particuler Caravanfera or publick Storehouse, where they truck their Tin, *Russia* Leather, Copper, Furrs, and other Merchandises, for the precious Commodities of *India* and *Persia*, and which afterwards are conveyed in-

The City of  
Shamachi

to *Russia* either by Land by the Way of *Derbene*, through the *Dagesthan* and *Circassian Tartars*, over the great Desarts of *Astrachan* to the river *Volga*; or else are Ship't in the Road of *Nizora* (the most safe and most convenient for Shipping in all the *Caspian Sea*) and from thence are carried up the *Volga*, to the River *Ocea*, and so by the *Inopea* to the Capital City of the Empire.

The project which by the Command of the present Czar of *Muscovy* has been set on foot, of a Communication betwixt the great Rivers the *Volga* and the *Don*, would when perfected, be of incredible advantage to the *Muscovites*, in transporting, not only their own, but all the *Sarick Indian*, *Persian*, and *Chinese* Commodities into the other parts of *Europe*; especially if his present Czarish Majesty should be so Successful against the *Crim Tartars*, as to make himself Master of the *Taurica Chersonesus*, and consequently of the City and Port of *Cassa*, (formerly so famous, when in the hands of the *Genoveses*), and the Port of *Erzorra*, Situate on the black Sea.

Communi-  
cation be-  
twixt the  
Rivers,  
Don and  
Volga.

I have hitherto withal the enquiry I could make, not been able to be fully instructed in what place it is, that this Communication betwixt these two Rivers is to be perfected; But thus much is most probable, that it must either be effected by cutting a Canal on this side of the first Branch of the River *Volga*, near the City of *Zariza*, where the *Don* advances within Seven Leagues of the *Volga*, or else by rendring the small River of *Kamous* Navigable, which rising out of the *Don*, falls below the said City of *Zaria*, behind the Isle of *Zerpinsk* into the River *Volga*.

The Chi-  
nese Trade.

As to what relates to the *Chinese Trade* in *Muscovy*, how the way thither was first discovered and improved by the *Sable Hunters* of *Siberia*, and how by the Rivers of *Obi*, *Genessay*, *Lena* and *Yemour*; and by the conveniency of their sleds drawn by *Rain-Deer*, during the Winter Season, they carry on that Trade, has been circumstantially related

lated in the first part, in that Chapter where we treated of *Siberia*.

We have therefore only thus much to add here; that as by the help of the *Banyans* and *Armenians*, the *Muscovites* maintain a constant correspondence with the *Indians* and *Persians*, so, with the assistance of those they call, *Kitachi*, they keep up their Communication with *China*. These *Kitachi* go commonly under the Name of *Chineses* in *Muscovy*, by reason, that the *Muscovites* call all the Inhabitants betwixt the River *Oby*, the *Volga* and *China* (which is properly the *Great Tartary*) by the Name of *Katichi*. But in regard the *Muscovites*, (as we mentioned in the first Volumes, have made such considerable discoveries on that side of late Years, as to have built several Cities, for the security of their Colonies on that Side, they have also by degrees drawn abundance of these wandering People to these Cities, where after once they became fix'd, and began to have a true Sense of the Benefits, and Advantage of a Settled Life, they have settled themselves in the other parts of *Muscovy*, and prove very beneficial to the *Russians*, to carry on the *Chinese* Trade, by their Correspondence with the several *Tartarian* Nations, Inhabiting that spacious Country betwixt *Siberia* and *Chinese* Wall.

As the accession of these foreign Nations, has been of great advantage to the encrease of Trade, and the Wealth of the *Russian* Empire, so it has contributed not a little to the peopling of the Country, which by reason of their intestine Commotions in our age, and frequent Inroads made by the *Crim Tartars*, was laid, in a great many parts, in a manner desolate. This is most conspicuous in the fertile Plains on both sides of the River *Scetca*, down to the *Volga*, almost as far as *Cesau*, which not many Years ago were in a manner dispeopled, but now are stock'd with an infinite number of Towns and Villages, and the City of *Musco* it self hath in a few Years so well recovered its pass'd disasters, that it is incomparable more Beautiful than ever it was before



before, and is reckoned to contain at present no less than betwixt Six and Seven Hundred Thousand Inhabitants of several Nations.

As the prodigious encrease of the Capital City must chiefly be attributed to the great concourse of the various Trading Nations we have mentioned, so the peopling of the Country is to be ascribed to the prudence of the Czar *Alexis Michaelouiss* the present Czar's Father, who finding his Territories exhausted of men, in his War with the *Poles*, carried away a number of Captives out of *Leithuania*, and the other *Polish* Provinces bordering on *Muscovy*, as were sufficient to plant several Colonies all along the Rivers *Gecca* and *Wolga*, who having been encouraged by several priviledges granted to them, have repeopled that Country in such manner as it appears at present,

Strength of  
the Muscovites in  
respect of  
their Neighbours.

But, since we have sufficiently spoke concerning the Strength of the *Muscovites*, by the encrease of their Wealth and Trade, we must also, before we conclude, say something of their present Condition in referenceto their Neighbours: The *Persians*, *Poles*, *Swedes*, the *Crim Tartars* and *Turks*.

The Persians.

As to what relates to the *Muscovites* in respect of the *Persians*, there is no great probability that these two Neighbours should have any occasion to try their mutual strength, since they are so separated from one another, by the *Caspian Sea*, the *Dagesthan* and *Caucassian Tartars*, and the vast desarts betwixt these, and *Astrachan*; and that the common benefit they receive by their Trade in the *Caspian Sea*, engages them equally to keep a good understanding betwixt them, especially since, upon occasion they may be very serviceable to one another against the *Turks*.

The Tartars.

The *Tartars* bordering the North East upon *Siberia*, and some other Provinces under the Czar of *Muscovy's* jurisdiction, tho' they formerly (especially the *Calmuc Tartars*) used to be very troublesome to some of the *Tartarian* Provinces, depending upon the *Russian Empire*; nevertheless since the *Muscovites* have guarded the Frontiers on that side, with

with good Fortifications and Garrisons, and have made these Vagabonds sensible of the advantage of their Fire Arms, they are not so forward in making their irruptions. Their only way they make use of now is, to appear sometimes in great Numbers on the Frontiers, and to send their Deputies into *Muscovy*; by which means they get considerable Presents, from the Czar, who thinks it more Prudence to purchase the Friendship of a Vagabond People, who have nothing to loose, than to put himself to the expence of sending an Army against them; In lieu of which they assist the Czar in his Wars, with a considerable Number of Horse, and are very serviceable to the *Muscovite* in furthering their Passage and Traffick into *China*.

But the *Turks* and *Crim Tartars*, used to be the most Mischievous Neighbours to *Muscovy*. 'Tis true the *Turks* do not immediately border upon *Muscovy*, but the Country Inhabited by the *Budziack* and *Crim Tartars*, who tho' at a great distance to the South from the City of *Musco*, as they are the Grand Seigniors Vassals, so he makes use of them like his Hunting Dogs, to overcome the Southern part of *Muscovy*, to the very Gates of its Capital City.

*The Turks  
and Crim  
Tartars.*

Czar *Michael Frederovits* endeavoured to prevent their Incurfions, by causing the Woods to be cut down in some places, and by reason of a Line strengthened with a Moat, of about Five Hundred Miles in Length; but they did not rest, till they had pull'd down the first, and fill'd up the last, and by their frequent Incurfions had almost rendered that part of *Muscovy* quite desolate. For which reason the *Muscovites* were always obliged to keep a considerable Body of Horse on the Frontiers, and sometimes to give them a diversion by the help of the *Donepsian Cossacks*, and the *Nogajan Tartars*.

But the case is much alter'd as to this particular of late Years; For since the *Muscovites*, by vertue of a Peace concluded with the *Poles* at *Oliva*, are become Masters of *Kiev*; this serves them in a great measure, at once to Bridle the insolency of these Robbers,

Robbers, and for a Bulwark against the *Turks*; especially if they prevent the last from getting footing in *Ukraina*. But the taking of *Asoph*, and the further progress of the present *Czar* against the *Crim Tartars*, gives a fair prospect to the *Muscovites*, not only of securing themselves for the future against their attempts, but also of reducing them under their obedience, and by taking the City of *Precop* to enter the limits of their Empire to the Borders of the Black Sea.

The Poles

The *Poles* are certainly the most redoubtable enemies the *Muscovites* have, their Situation is such, as to encourage them to Act against the *Muscovites*, when ever they meet with a favourable opportunity; Of which they have given Sufficient Proofs, during their intestine Commotions in 1607, when they were just upon the point of having made it a Province of the Crown of *Poland*, if by their own divisions they had not given the *Muscovites* leisure to recover themselves. But now they seem to have sufficiently secured their Frontiers against the Insult of the *Poles*, by their Masters of *Surlasko*, *Soveria* and *Kjovia*; and the *Poles* are reckoned much the better Soldiers in the Field, by reason of their great number of Horse, yet the accession of the *Zaporogian Cossacks* has a little Strengthened the *Muscovian* Forces, and may in some measure be look'd as a sufficient Balance to the Advantage of the *Polish* Horse, especially since the *Muscovites*, now are capable to outdo the *Poles*, if not in goodnels, at least in the number of their Horse.

The Swedes.

The *Muscovites* had formerly great Contests with the *Swedes*, about *Livonia*, which occasion'd several Bloody Wars, but since the causes of these differences are removed by the Peace of *Oliva*, when the first resign'd all their pretensions to this Country, the *Muscovites* need not fear any thing from that Side, where it Border'd on *Sweden*; since more Conquests in far distant Country, would prove more hurtful than profitable to *Sweden*. And the

*Muscovites*



*Muscovites* have no great encouragement to Attack the *Swedes* on that Side, where they have for the most part succeeded so ill in their Attempts; besides that it is to be feared, that if the *Poles*, (who's interest it is, not to let *Livonia* fall into their hands) should joyn with the *Swedes* against them, they would put them very hard to it; and so the *Muscovite* Army's appear now very numerous in the Field, yet would they scarce be able to grapple with two such Potent Enemies, who's Army by the Conjunction and Advantage of the *Polish* Horse, with the well Disciplin'd Infantry of the *Swedes*, would perhaps prove invincible to them.

But to come to a Conclusion; Whether we consider the vast extent, fertility, and variety of products of the *Russian* Empire. whether its strength in regard of its vast Revenues, its Advantageous situation in respect of its Neighbours (being surrounded on the North and East, with a vast Sea, and a great Wilderness) or in regard of its great number of Forces it is able to maintain; or whether in respect of the vast increase of its Traffick, the *Persian*, *Indian*, *Chinese* Trade (especially if improved by the Advantages his present Czarish Majesty has had over the *Crim Tartars*) it will sufficiently appear out of what has been said in this Treatise, that as the Present Flourishing Condition of the *Russian* Empire renders it one of the most considerable in *Europe*, so, were it not, that the Constitution of their Government seems to be a constant check to their growing greatness, in reference to their Traffick, it is more than probable, that under the Auspicious Reign of so hopeful a Prince, as now Sway's the Sceptre; it might contend for the Superiority with the Greatest and most powerful Kingdoms of the Universe.

FINIS.



*Books Printed for Abel Roper, at  
the Black Boy, in Fleet-street.*

**T**HE History of *Poland*, in several Letters to Persons of Quality: Giving an Account of the Ancient and Present State of that Kingdom, Historical, Geographical, Physical, Political, and Ecclesiastical. *viz.* Its Origine and Extent. With a Description of its Towns and Provinces; the succession, and remarkable Actions of all its Kings, and of the Great Dukes of *Lituania*. The Election, Power, and Coronation of the King, The Senate, or House of Lords: The Diet, and Form of Government: The privileges of the Gentry; their Religion, Learning, Language, Customs, Habits, Manners, Riches Trade and Military Affairs, together with the state of Physick and Natural Knowledge; as also an Account of the Teutonick Order, of the Duke of *Cearland*, &c. By B. Connor, Fellow of the Royal Society. Published by the Care and Assistance of Mr. *Savage*.

The 2d. Edition (with an Addition of Remarks on Marriage, by Mr. Brown) of the Marriage-Ceremonies: or the Ceremonies used in Marriages in all parts of the World. By Seignior *Gaya*. Translated from the Italian.

*Printed for A. Roper, and A. Boswel.*

The Grounds and Foundation of Natural Religion discovered, in the Principal Branches of it, in opposition to the prevailing Notions of the Modern Scepticks and Latitudinarians; with an Introduction concerning the necessity of revealed Religion. By Tho. Beconfal, B.D. of Brasenose College in Oxford,

R

